

Regional Specification for Water Services

STD_0002



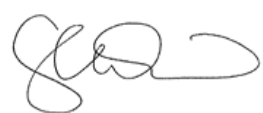
December 2024 Version 3.1



This document was developed for Porirua, Hutt, Upper Hutt and Wellington city councils, South Wairarapa District Council, Greater Wellington Regional Council and Wellington Water Limited.

Document Control

Rev No	Revision description	Date
0	Final	December 2015
0.1	Minor amendments as marked	July 2016
2.0	Minor revision	May 2019
3.0	Major revision	December 2021
3.1	Minor revision	December 2024

Description	Name	Date	Signature
Prepared by	Emily Greenberg, Senior Project manager Standards	26/11/24	
Reviewer	Francis Leniston, Head of Design	9/12/24	
Approver	Susannah Cullen, General Manager Network Development & Delivery	13/12/24	

Copyright 2024 Wellington Water Limited. Wellington Water Limited permits the use, copying and repackaging of this material (or part thereof) provided: (a) Wellington Water Limited is acknowledged as the owner of this material (or part thereof) in any subsequent works; and (b) any works created by using, copying or repackaging this material (or part thereof) is subject to this same condition; and (c) any works created by using, copying or repackaging this material (or part thereof) are not used or sold for profit. All other rights reserved.

Disclaimer. This material is provided on a good faith basis to advance Wellington Water Limited's principal objectives. Every effort has been made to ensure that the information contained is accurate as at the date of preparation. To the greatest extent allowed by law, Wellington Water Limited is not responsible for any loss that arises from the use of this material by any party. Wellington Water Limited makes no guarantees regarding the content or accuracy of information contained herein.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1	Introduction	1
1.1	Review of specification	1
2	Using the Regional Specification for Water Services	2
2.1	Alternative solutions and dispensations	2
2.2	Definitions	2
2.2.1	Nominal pipe diameter	2
2.2.2	Definitions	2
2.2.3	Abbreviations	5
2.2.4	Pipe gradients	8
2.3	References	8
3	General Requirements	13
3.1	Subdivision requirements	13
3.2	Legislative and regulatory requirements	13
3.3	Testing and inspection records	13
4	General Specifications	14
4.1	Health and safety obligations	14
4.1.1	Immunisations	14
4.2	Environmental management	15
4.2.1	Water ponding/stormwater management	16
4.2.2	Noise control	16
4.2.3	Odour control	16
4.3	Working near trees	17
4.4	Working with asbestos cement pipes	17
4.4.1	Design for replacement of asbestos cement pipes	17
4.4.2	Working with AC pipes	18
4.5	Excavation	18
4.5.1	General	18
4.5.2	Definition of hard rock	19
4.5.3	Excavated material	19
4.5.4	Trench dewatering	19
4.6	Typical trench arrangement	20
4.7	Trench foundation	20
4.7.1	Standard preparation of pipe trench foundation	20

4.7.2	Remedial measures for insufficient bearing capacity	21
4.7.3	High groundwater environment	22
4.7.4	Extremely poor ground	23
4.7.5	Post-construction testing	25
4.8	Reuse of in situ material	26
4.8.1	Compaction and testing for pipe embedment	26
4.8.2	Compaction and testing for general backfill	26
4.9	Pipeline embedment	26
4.9.1	Flexible pipe embedment	26
4.9.2	Rigid pipe embedment	29
4.9.3	Geotextile filter fabric and migration of fines	31
4.9.4	Compaction and post-construction testing	31
4.9.5	Concrete bedding	33
4.9.6	Concrete surround	34
4.10	General backfill	35
4.10.1	General	35
4.10.2	Backfill material	35
4.10.3	Compaction and post-construction testing	36
4.11	Reinstatement	36
4.11.1	Pavement and surface reinstatement	36
4.11.2	Marking of hydrants, valves, service valves and pavement	37
4.12	Building in close proximity to public pipelines	38
4.12.1	Sleeving an existing pipe	39
4.13	As-builts	41
4.14	Slip-lining	41
4.14.1	Slip lining installation	41
4.15	Pipe-bursting	42
4.15.1	Pipe bursting of pressure pipelines	43
4.15.2	Pipe bursting of gravity pipelines	44
4.15.3	Underground services near pipe bursting	44
4.15.4	Pipe bursting installation	44
4.15.5	Pipeline recovery	45
4.16	Impact moling	45
4.17	Directional drilling	45
4.17.1	Underground services near directional drilling	45

4.17.2	Directional drilling pipe installation	46
4.18	Lining as pipe rehabilitation	48
4.18.1	CIPP lining of pressure water pipes	48
4.19	Polyethylene welding	48
4.19.1	Butt fusion welding	49
4.19.2	Electrofusion welding	49
4.19.3	Site QA forms	50
4.19.4	Pipeline testing and weld testing	52
4.19.5	Welding PE pressure pipe	52
4.19.6	Welding PE gravity pipe	53
4.19.7	Work method statement	53
4.19.8	PE fusion welding framework	56
5	Drainage Specifications	63
5.1	Safety	63
5.1.1	Drainage hazards	63
5.1.2	Drainage network underground entry	63
5.2	Setting out	63
5.2.1	Drains laid on a curve	64
5.2.2	Drain invert at a manhole	64
5.2.3	Clearances from other utilities	64
5.3	Materials	65
5.3.1	Cement	65
5.3.2	Sand	66
5.3.3	Reinforcing steel	66
5.3.4	Mortar	66
5.3.5	Non-structural concrete	66
5.3.6	Structural concrete	67
5.3.7	Pipes	67
5.3.8	Manhole covers	70
5.3.9	Maintenance shaft covers	70
5.4	Stormwater and Wastewater shutdowns	71
5.5	Jointing and laying of pipes	71
5.5.1	General	71
5.5.2	Changes in grade or direction	71
5.5.3	Repairs	72

5.5.4	Flush jointed concrete pipes	72
5.5.5	Polyethylene pipe joints.....	72
5.5.6	Cathodic protection	72
5.6	Water stops.....	72
5.7	Manholes	73
5.7.1	Manhole design.....	73
5.7.2	Manhole construction.....	73
5.7.3	Manhole rungs	74
5.7.4	Manhole safety grilles.....	74
5.7.5	Connections to manholes	75
5.7.6	Expansion joints on PE pipes at manholes.....	75
5.7.7	Benching of manholes.....	76
5.7.8	Manholes on large pipelines.....	76
5.7.9	Drops at manholes	76
5.7.10	Manhole lid construction.....	77
5.7.11	Manhole frame and covers	79
5.7.12	Changes in grade and direction	80
5.7.13	Repairs to manholes	80
5.7.14	Terminal rising-main manholes	80
5.8	Field drains	80
5.9	Testing.....	81
5.9.1	Water test	81
5.9.2	Low pressure air test.....	81
5.9.3	Testing of concrete manholes.....	82
5.9.4	CCTV inspection	82
5.9.5	Pressure line testing.....	82
5.10	Wastewater pumping stations.....	83
5.10.1	General.....	83
5.10.2	Equipment requirements.....	84
5.10.3	Pipework	85
5.10.4	Pumps.....	86
5.10.5	Dry-well installations.....	86
5.10.6	Electrical specification.....	87
5.10.7	Private wastewater pumping stations	87
5.11	Stormwater pumping stations	87

5.11.1	General.....	87
5.11.2	Equipment requirements.....	88
5.11.3	Pumps.....	89
5.11.4	Pipework	89
5.11.5	Dry-well installations.....	90
5.11.6	Electrical specification.....	90
6	Water Supply Specifications	91
6.1	Hygienic practices and immunisations.....	91
6.1.1	Cleanliness	91
6.1.2	Equipment.....	91
6.2	Materials	92
6.2.1	Materials compliance.....	92
6.2.2	Concrete.....	93
6.2.3	PVC pipes.....	93
6.2.4	Polyethylene pipes	94
6.2.5	Ductile iron pipes	94
6.2.6	Steel pipes.....	96
6.2.7	Copper pipes	97
6.2.8	ABS pipes.....	97
6.2.9	Stainless steel pipes	97
6.2.10	Manholes	98
6.2.11	Valves	99
6.2.12	Surface box systems for service pipe valves and manifolds	101
6.2.13	Surface box systems for area meters.....	102
6.2.14	Surface box systems for Valve blocks	102
6.2.15	Surface box systems for Hydrant blocks	102
6.2.16	Fittings.....	103
6.2.17	Pressure reducing valves.....	106
6.2.18	Non-return valves	108
6.2.19	Air valves	108
6.2.20	Water meters	109
6.2.21	Backflow preventers	111
6.3	Pipe laying	112
6.3.1	Minimum cover to pipeline.....	112
6.3.2	Maximum cover to pipeline	112

6.3.3	Minimum clearances from other utilities	112
6.3.4	Pipe handling.....	113
6.3.5	Allowable grade	113
6.3.6	Thrust and anchor blocks.....	114
6.3.7	Fittings.....	115
6.3.8	Warning tape / tracer wire	116
6.3.9	Cathodic protection	116
6.4	Pipe jointing	117
6.4.1	Rubber-ring joint.....	117
6.4.2	Mechanical compression fittings	118
6.4.3	Polyethylene butt fusion and electrofusion welding.....	118
6.4.4	Flanges	119
6.4.5	Copper pipe.....	120
6.4.6	Steel pipe welding.....	120
6.4.7	Ductile iron pipe.....	126
6.4.8	Cold solvent cement welds	126
6.5	Pressure testing of pipelines.....	127
6.5.1	Testing of steel, ductile iron, and PVC pipes.....	127
6.5.2	Testing of polyethylene pipes	128
6.6	Pipe repairs	129
6.6.1	AC pipe failures	129
6.6.2	PVC pipelines.....	129
6.6.3	Ductile iron and cast iron pipe failures	129
6.6.4	Steel pipe failures.....	130
6.6.5	Polyethylene pipe failures.....	130
6.7	Tapping of mains under pressure	131
6.8	Water supply shutdowns (cut-ins)	131
6.8.1	Critical and key account customers	132
6.8.2	Trial shutdown	132
6.8.3	Reactive shutdown.....	132
6.8.4	Temporary supplies.....	133
6.9	Manholes	133
6.9.1	Manhole construction.....	133
6.9.2	Manhole rungs	134
6.9.3	Manhole lid construction.....	134

6.9.4	Hinged manhole covers	134
6.9.5	Manhole safety grilles	134
6.10	Connections to the main	134
6.10.1	Connections to the bulk water pipeline	134
6.10.2	Service connections	134
6.11	Fire Services	135
6.12	Disinfection	135
6.12.1	New or lined pipelines	135
6.12.2	Repairs	136
6.12.3	Reservoirs	137
6.13	Reservoirs	141
6.13.1	Foundation and geotechnical assessment	142
6.13.2	Structural design requirements	142
6.13.3	Pipework	143
6.13.4	Roof hatches and ladders	147
6.13.5	Electrical, monitoring and control equipment	148
6.14	Water supply pumping stations	149
6.14.1	Building	149
6.14.2	Pumps	150
6.14.3	Pipework	150
6.14.4	Pumping station serving as a reservoir	152
6.14.5	Electrical, monitoring and control equipment	152
7	Appendices	153

List of Tables

Table 2-1 – Definitions	2
Table 2-2 – Abbreviations	5
Table 2-3 – Conversion table	8
Table 2-4 – Referenced documents and standards	9
Table 4-1 – Required immunisations	15
Table 4-2 – Bedding, haunching and surrounds material for flexible pipes	27
Table 4-3 – Imported sand material grading limits.....	28
Table 4-4 – 5 to 14 mm drainage chip grading limits.....	28
Table 4-5 – Asphalt aggregate 8mm down grit typical grading	28
Table 4-6 – Grading limits for bedding/surround material (typically used for bulk water pipes)	28
Table 4-7 – Bedding, haunching and side zone material for rigid pipes	30
Table 4-8 – Drainage bedding, haunching and side zone	30
Table 4-9 – Backfill material for private properties	36
Table 4-10 – Conversion between Scala penetrometer blows and Clegg Hammer results	36
Table 4-11 – Minimum clear space requirements for launch end of sleeve	40
Table 4-12 – Minimum information required on welding log sheets	50
Table 4-13 – Information required for WMS	53
Table 4-14 – Weld performance and test requirements	59
Table 5-1 – Minimum clearances from drains as measured between barrels	65
Table 6-1 – Allowable ductile iron and steel pipe diameters for the bulk water distribution network.....	95
Table 6-2 – Ductile iron pipe ISO 2531 requirements.....	96
Table 6-3 – Minimum performance specification for meters.....	110
Table 6-4 – Minimum cover to pipelines (in metres).....	112
Table 6-5 – Maximum cover to pipelines.....	112
Table 6-6 – Minimum water main clearances from utilities.....	113
Table 6-7 – Pipeline test durations for the constant pressure (water loss) method.....	127
Table 6-8 – Pipe sizes and lengths suitable for pressure rebound method.....	128

List of Figures

Figure 4-1 – Typical pipe trench arrangement.....	20
Figure 4-2 – Typical trench arrangement with a raft foundation constructed of imported fill.....	22
Figure 4-3 – Typical trench arrangement where the site has a high groundwater table	23
Figure 4-4 – Typical trench arrangement where the in situ ground is extremely poor.....	25
Figure 4-5 – Embedment for flexible pipes.....	27
Figure 4-6 – Embedment for rigid pipes	29
Figure 4-7 – Restrictions on use of heavy machine compaction	32
Figure 4-8 – Clearance and working space requirements for sleeved pipes	40
Figure 4-9 – PE fusion welding framework	57

List of Appendices

Appendix 1 Standard Details.....	154
-------------------------------------	-----

1 INTRODUCTION

Wellington Water Limited is a shared service, council-controlled organisation, which is jointly owned by Hutt, Porirua, Upper Hutt and Wellington City Councils, South Wairarapa District Council and Greater Wellington Regional Council. On behalf of these councils, the three waters network (stormwater, wastewater and water supply) is managed under a trusted advisor model.

The STD_0002 *Regional Specification for Water Services* (R.Spec), and its parent document, the STD_0001 *Regional Standard for Water Services* (RSWS) (version 3.1), serve as updated versions of three waters infrastructure standards, and specifications to ensure a regionally consistent method of design and implementation of water services to meet outcomes of:

- Safe and healthy water,
- Respectful of the environment, and
- Resilient networks support our economy.

This revision also reflects changes to legislative responsibilities since the introduction of Taumata Arowai (the national regulator for water services) and the Water Services Act 2021.

The *Regional Specification for Water Services* (R.Spec) contains the minimum technical specifications for the materials, construction, installation, testing and commissioning of the stormwater, wastewater and water supply networks. It is the detail around how the Regional Standard is to be enacted.

The document is to be used in conjunction with STD_0001 and DESR_0001, the *Register of Approved Products for use in the Water Services Infrastructure* (Approved Products Register or APR), which are available on the Wellington Water webpage.

The *Regional Standard for Water Services* provides minimum standards that must be applied to the design and construction of proposed infrastructure that will be vested in council, and to the maintenance, renewal, upgrade or decommissioning of existing public infrastructure.

1.1 Review of specification

The specification will be reviewed and revised as needed as policy and technology evolves. Users of this document should ensure that the latest published version is used. Feedback on the specifications can be made to the following email: standards@wellingtonwater.co.nz.

2 USING THE REGIONAL SPECIFICATION FOR WATER SERVICES

The *Regional Specification for Water Services* lists the technical requirements for materials and methods used in the construction of the three waters network infrastructure. The specification details the requirements for a specific product, process or activity. It is to be read in conjunction with the STD_0001 *Regional Standard for Water Services*, the STD_0003 *Regional As-built Specification for Water Services*, ICT_0004 *Regional Draughting Manual for Water Services* and the DESR_0001 *Approved Products Register*. The *Regional Standard for Water Services* outlines the network objectives, performance criteria for minimum operational and functional levels of service, design methodology and general specifications. The *Approved Product Register* lists products that comply with the requirements of the *Regional Specification for Water Services*.

This specification supersedes the Regional Specification for Water Services v3.0 (December 2021).

2.1 Alternative solutions and dispensations

Departures from this specification will be at the discretion of Wellington Water in accordance with the Dispensation Procedure and require the written permission of Wellington Water.

2.2 Definitions

For the purposes of this document, the following definitions and abbreviations shall apply.

2.2.1 Nominal pipe diameter

All pipe diameters referred to in this document are in millimetres (mm) and are nominal internal diameters, unless specifically noted otherwise. Only polyethylene pipes (PE) are denoted with a nominal outside diameter and should be post-fixed with the letters OD. For example:

63 OD	is 63 mm nominal outside diameter for PE pipes
100 mm	is 100 mm nominal internal diameter for other types of pipes

2.2.2 Definitions

Table 2-1 provides the terms used in this document:

Table 2-1 – Definitions

Term	Description
Building Line Restriction (BLR)	An angled line projecting up to the surface from below the pipeline.
Building in close proximity	Building works near new or existing public pipelines, and/or laying new or upgraded public pipelines near an existing structure or retaining wall.
Building near	Building in close proximity within a horizontal distance of 3 m measured from the outside of pipe, or within 5 m for pile driving.

Term	Description
Building over	Building in close proximity within a vertical height above the finished ground over a pipe that equals the depth to pipe invert plus 1 m, with a minimum height of 2.4 m, and a vertical depth of 300 mm below the pipe invert.
Building over and near	Building works within a zone around a pipe bounded horizontally by the lateral distance defined as building near, and the vertical height and depth defined as building over.
Building works	Structures, retaining walls, or any other works which may compromise the integrity, durability or accessibility of a pipe, or be compromised by a pipe. This includes new buildings and structures, modification of existing structures, demolition, temporary works including heavy machinery, excavation works and any work that changes the current form and shape of the ground.
Bulk water pipeline	Water supply pipeline from the water treatment plants to the network. The pipes are usually larger than 375mm and can be as large as 1400 mm in diameter. Also referred to as “bulk main”.
Council	The participating territorial authority within which the boundaries of the proposed scheme or renewal is located; or a delegated representative thereof (e.g., Wellington Water).
Developer	An individual or organisation having the financial responsibility for the project and includes the owner, contractor and constructor.
Drainage	Wastewater or stormwater pipework, channel or stream, and drain has the same meaning.
Drinking water	Water that— (a) is safe to drink; and (b) complies with the drinking water standards made under section 47 of the Water Services Act 2021.
Manifold	A fitting on a water supply service pipe that typically incorporates one or more sets of a service valve, backflow protection device and meter.
Maximum design pressure	Maximum operating pressure of the system or of the pressure zone considering future developments, all other foreseeable operating conditions and including an allowance for surge.
Network	All pipes, fittings, pumping stations, reservoirs, structures, treatment facilities and any other appurtenant components or facilities directly associated with water supply, wastewater or stormwater.
Overland flow	See ‘secondary flow’.
Potable water	The same meaning as ‘drinking water’.

Term	Description
Principal main	A water main, typically 100 to 200 mm in diameter, that provides the firefighting and majority of water supply in a street. Sometimes called a distribution or secondary main.
Pumping station (in water supply)	A facility for mechanically increasing pressures in a pipeline typically used to fill reservoirs or increase pressures in a distribution zone.
Pumping station (in wastewater)	A facility for mechanically increasing pressure in a pipeline, or to lift effluent to a higher elevation in an adjacent manhole (lifting station); typically used to convey collected effluent to an adjacent catchment or trunk main.
Pumping station (in stormwater)	Similar to pumping station (wastewater) but designed to convey the stormwater to a safe discharge point.
Regional plan	Planning document developed to assist a regional council to carry out any of its functions in order to achieve the purpose of the Resource Management Act 1991.
Reservoir	A large, typically larger than 30m ³ , enclosed tank used to store public drinking water.
Reticulation main	A water main that distributes water to customer connections. Could be either a principal main or rider main.
Rider main	A water main, typically less than 100 mm in diameter, and secondary to any principal main in a street.
Rising main	A dedicated pipeline running between a pump's discharge and a nominated discharge point; typically, a reservoir in water supply systems, or a manhole on a gravity drain for wastewater systems.
Secondary flow	The excess stormwater flow that cannot be contained by the primary network, typically due to extraordinary design storm or network blockage. Also referred to as overland flow or secondary overland flow.
Seismic criticality	The asset criticality following a seismic event. Seismic criticality is determined by the possible consequences of failure, both immediately after the event and during recovery.
Service pipe	The section of pipe between a public drinking water reticulation main and the service pipe valve.
Service pipe valve	An isolation (water shut off) valve on the service pipe where a connection is made between the public drinking water supply (in the street) and the private dwelling or commercial building. Sometimes referred to as a "toby".
Sewer	A pipe that conveys wastewater/sewage, typically using gravity. Could also be called a sewer drain.

Term	Description
Stormwater	Rainwater that does not percolate into the groundwater or evaporate, but flows via overland flow, interflow, channels or pipes into a defined channel, open watercourse or a constructed infiltration facility.
Subdivision	The subdivision of land as defined in the Resource Management Act 1991.
Supervisory control and data acquisition (SCADA)	The council owned and operated telemetry and control systems used to remotely monitor and control facilities such as pumping stations, reservoirs, large-scale metering installations etc.
Trunk main (in water supply)	A water main typically 300mm or greater in diameter designed to transport water between reservoirs, distribution zones, source waters and reticulation mains. Sometimes called a transmission main or primary main.
Trunk main (in wastewater)	A large sewer that collects tributary flow from adjacent catchments and/or pumping stations.
Wastewater (sewage)	Water that has been used and contains unwanted dissolved and/or suspended substances from communities, including homes and businesses and industries.
Water supply	Water distributed for domestic, commercial, industrial and firefighting purposes.
Wellington Water	Wellington Water (abbreviated from Wellington Water Limited), when referred to as an entity, shall also mean the relevant territorial authority in relation to water services asset ownership and approvals; or the Engineer or Principal in relation to contractual approvals.

2.2.3 Abbreviations

Table 2-2 provides the abbreviations used in this document:

Table 2-2 – Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Description	Unit
ABS	Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene	
AC	Asbestos cement	
AS	Australian Standard Specification	
ASME	American Society of Mechanical Engineers	
ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials	
AWWA	American Water Works Association	
BLR	Building Line Restriction	
BRT	Batch release test	

Abbreviation	Description	Unit
BS	British Standard Specification	
BSP	British standard pipe	
CAR	Corridor access request	
CCTV	Closed-circuit television (video)	
dB(A)	Decibel A-weighted	dB(A)
DI	Ductile iron	
DN	Nominal diameter	mm
DWI	Drinking Water Inspectorate (UK)	
EF	Electrofusion	
EPDM	Ethylene-propylene diene monomer, a synthetic rubber	
GRP	Glass reinforced plastic	
GTAW	Gas tungsten arc welding	
GWRC	Greater Wellington Regional Council	
hr	Hour	hour
H	Head (water column measured in metres)	m
ha	Hectare	ha
ISO	International standards	
kPa	Kilopascal	10 ³ Pa
L	Litre	L
m	Metre	m
MPa	Megapascal (e.g. 10 ⁶ Pa)	MPa
m/s	Metres per second (e.g. ms ⁻¹)	m/s
m³/s	Cubic metres per second (e.g. m ³ s ⁻¹)	m ³ /s
mg/L	Milligrams per litre and it can also be expressed as parts per million (ppm)	mg/L
mm	Millimetres	mm
MMAW	Manual metal arc welding	
MSL	Mean sea level (1953 Wellington Vertical Datum)*	
N	Newton (1N = 1 kg m/s ²)	N
NBR	Nitrile	
NZBC	New Zealand Building Code	
NZS	New Zealand Standard Specification	

Abbreviation	Description	Unit
NCD	WCC New City Datum (same datum as MSL)	
NCOPUATTC	National Code of Practice for Utility Operators' Access to Transport Corridors	
NSF	National Sanitation Foundation	
NZECp	New Zealand Electrical Code of Practice	
NZTA	NZ Transport Agency	
N/m/m	Newtons per meter per meter, used as a measure of the ring stiffness for a pipe.	
OD	Outside diameter	mm
PE	Polyethylene (generic)	
PE80b	Medium density PE (MDPE)	
PE80c	High density PE (HDPE)	
PE100	High performance PE (HPPE)	
PIPA	Plastics Industry Pipe Association of Australia Limited	
PN	Nominal pressure	bar
PP	Polypropylene	
PPE	Personal protective equipment	
ppm	Parts per million and it also can be expressed as milligrams per litre (mg/L)	ppm
PRV	Pressure reducing valve	
PVC	Polyvinyl chloride (generic)	
PVC-M	Modified polyvinyl chloride	
PVC-O	Molecularly oriented polyvinyl chloride	
PVC-U	Unplasticised polyvinyl chloride	
PWWF	Peak wet weather flow	L/s
RCA	Road Controlling Authority	
RMA	Resource Management Act 1991	
RTU	Remote telemetry unit	
RPZ	Reduced pressure zone	
R.Spec	Regional Specification for Water Services	
RSWS	Regional Standard for Water Services	
s	second	s
SCADA	Supervisory control and data acquisition	

Abbreviation	Description	Unit
SDR	Standard dimension ratio	
SN	Stiffness number	
STCL	Concrete lined steel	
STP	Specified test pressure	
TNZ	Transit New Zealand	
WCC	Wellington City Council	
WMS	Work Method Statement	
WPS	Welding Procedure Specification	
WRAS	Water Regulation Advisory Scheme (UK)	

*Local sea levels vary around the coast, hence tide tables have to be referenced specific to the location. Tide levels listed in Tide Tables published by LINZ use a Wellington Standard Port zero datum equivalent to -0.929 m MSL or 3.551 m below benchmark K80/2 (LINZ code ABPC – updated Feb 2018). The actual average measured sea level is currently measured at around 1.12 m above Wellington Standard Port datum or 0.191 m MSL (1953 Wellington Vertical Datum).

2.2.4 Pipe gradients

This document uses a percentage to represent pipe or channel grades as opposed to a ratio (i.e., 1% instead of 1 in 100 (V:H)). The percentage grade can be calculated by dividing the ratio's vertical component by the horizontal component and multiplying by 100. Conversions are presented in **Table 2-3**.

Table 2-3 – Conversion table

Grade %	Grade ratio
0.33%	1 in 300
0.5%	1 in 200
1%	1 in 100
2%	1 in 50
5%	1 in 20
10%	1 in 10
20%	1 in 5
50%	1 in 2

2.3 References

New Zealand (NZS), Australian (AS) and joint (AS/NZS) standards are referenced throughout this document, as well as British (BS, BS EN), American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME), American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) and international (ISO) standards. Where a standard's year has been nominated, then that specific issue is to be used. Where no year is nominated, the latest version is to be used.

Where it is stated that a product must comply with a nominated standard, third party certification demonstrating compliance with the standard shall be made available from the manufacturer. The certifying agency shall be National Association of Testing Authorities approved and shall be acceptable to Wellington Water. Standards and documents referenced in this document are listed in **Table 2-4**.

Table 2-4 – Referenced documents and standards

Reference	Title
STD_0001	Regional Standard for Water Services
DESR_0001	Register of Approved Products for use in Water Services Infrastructure (Approved Products Register or APR)
STD_0003	As-Built Specification for Water Services
ICT_0004	Draughting Manual for Water Services
WQMG_0001	Hygiene Code of Practice for safe and healthy drinking water
ONPP_0001	Wellington Water Shutdown Requests
Excavation Safety Good Practice Guidelines	Good Practice Guide – Hygiene Practices to prevent Water Supply Contamination
NCOPUATTC	National Code of Practice for Utility Operators' Access to Transport Corridors
NZBC	New Zealand Building Code
NZTA M/07	Specification for roadmarking paints
TNZ M/4	Specification for basecourse aggregate
SNZ PAS 4509	New Zealand Fire Service firefighting water supplies code of practice
WSA 150 - 2021	Industry Standard for cured-in-place pipes (CIPP) used for the renovation of drinking water pipes
WSA 202 - 2021	Manual for selection and application of cured-in-place pipe (CIPP) and spray liners for use in water pipes
New Zealand standards	
NZS 3101.1 & 2	Concrete structures standard
NZS 3104	Specification for concrete production
NZS 3106	Design of concrete structures for the storage of liquids
NZS 3109	Concrete construction
NZS 3501	Specification for copper tubes for water, gas and sanitation
NZS 4219	Seismic performance of engineering systems in buildings
NZS 4442	Welded steel pipes and fittings for water, sewage and medium pressure gas

Reference	Title
NZS 4517	Fire sprinkler systems for houses
NZS 4522	Underground fire hydrants
NZS 4541	Automatic fire sprinkler systems
Joint Australian and New Zealand standards	
AS/NZS 1170.0	Structural design actions – Part 0: General principles
AS/NZS 1260	PVC-U pipes and fittings for drain, waste and vent applications
AS/NZS 1477	PVC pipes and fittings for pressure applications
AS 2129	Flanges for pipes, valves and fittings
AS/NZS 2280:2014	Ductile iron pipes and fittings
AS/NZS 2566.2	Buried flexible pipelines – Part 2: Installation
AS/NZS 2638.2	Gate valves for waterworks purposes – Part 2: Resilient seated
AS/NZS 2845.1	Water supply – Backflow prevention devices – Part 1: Materials, design and performance requirements
AS/NZS 2865	Safe working in a confined space
AS/NZS 2980:2007	Qualification of welders for fusion welding of steels
AS/NZS 3500.1	Plumbing and drainage – Part 1: Water services
AS/NZS 3518	Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) compounds, pipes and fittings for pressure applications
AS/NZS 3725	Design for installation of buried concrete pipes
AS/NZS 3862	External fusion-bonded epoxy coating for steel pipes
AS/NZS 4020	Testing of products for use in contact with drinking water
AS/NZS 4058	Precast concrete pipe (pressure and non-pressure)
AS/NZS 4087	Metallic flanges for waterworks purposes
AS/NZS 4129:2008	Fittings for polyethylene (PE) pipes for pressure applications
AS/NZS 4130	Polyethylene (PE) pipes for pressure applications
AS/NZS 4131	Polyethylene (PE) compounds for pressure pipes and fittings
AS/NZS 4158	Thermal-bonded polymeric coatings on valves and fittings for water industry purposes
AS/NZS 4331.1	Metallic flanges – Part 1: Steel flanges
AS/NZS 4331.2	Metallic flanges – Part 2: Cast iron flanges
AS/NZS 4671	Steel reinforcing materials
AS/NZS 4765	Modified PVC (PVC-M) pipes for pressure applications
AS/NZS 4998	Bolted unrestrained mechanical couplings for waterworks purposes

Reference	Title
AS/NZS 5065	Polyethylene and polypropylene pipes and fittings for drainage and sewerage applications
Australian standards	
AS 1579	Arc-welded steel pipes and fittings for water and wastewater
AS 1646	Elastomeric seals for waterworks purposes
AS 1741	Vitrified clay pipes and fittings
AS 1199.1	Sampling procedures for inspection by attributes – Part 1: Sampling schemes indexed by acceptance quality limit (AQL) for lot-by-lot inspection
AS 2129	Flanges for pipes, valves and fittings
AS 2439.1:2007	Perforated plastics drainage and effluent pipe and fittings – Part 1: Perforated drainage pipe and associated fittings
AS 3996	Access covers and grates
AS 4794	Non-return valves for waterworks purposes – Swing check and tilting disc
AS 4795.1	Butterfly valves for waterworks purposes – Wafer and lugged
AS 4795.2	Butterfly valves for waterworks purposes – Double flanged
AS 4956	Air valves for water supply
International standards	
ANSI/NSF 61	Drinking water system components – Health effects
ANSI/AWWA C219/06	Bolted, sleeve-type couplings for plain-end pipe
ASME B31.4	Pipeline transportation systems for liquids and slurries
ASTM A312	Standard specification for seamless and welded austenitic stainless steel pipes
BS EN 1092	Flanges and their joints. Circular flanges for pipes, valves, fittings and accessories, PN designated, Steel flanges
BS 534	Specification for steel pipes, joints and specials for water and sewage
BS 2971	Specification for class II arc welding of carbon steel pipework for carrying fluids
BS 5163.1	Valves for waterworks purposes. Predominantly key-operated cast iron gate valves. Code of practice
BS 6920	Suitability of non-metallic products for use in contact with water intended for human consumption with regard to their effect on the quality of water
ISO 2531	Ductile iron pipes, fittings, accessories and their joints for water applications

Reference	Title
ISO 5752	Metal valves for use in flanged pipe systems – Face-to-face and centre-to-face dimensions
ISO 13953	Polyethylene (PE) pipes and fittings -- Determination of the tensile strength and failure mode of test pieces from a butt-fused joint
ISO 13954	Plastics pipes and fittings -- Peel decohesion test for polyethylene (PE) electrofusion assemblies of nominal outside diameter greater than or equal to 90 mm
ISO 13955	Plastics pipes and fittings -- Crushing decohesion test for polyethylene (PE) electrofusion assemblies
ISO 13956	Plastics pipes and fittings -- Decohesion test of polyethylene (PE) saddle fusion joints -- Evaluation of ductility of fusion joint interface by tear test
ISO 21307:2011	Plastics pipes and fittings -- Butt fusion jointing procedures for polyethylene (PE) pipes and fittings used in the construction of gas and water distribution systems

3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

This document provides the minimum technical and construction specifications for the three waters network and constitutes the minimum requirements of Council as a utility owner under the Local Government Act. Reference shall be made to this document when planning and designing new stormwater, wastewater and water supply infrastructure (the three waters) and for the renewal, upgrade or decommissioning of existing infrastructure.

3.1 Subdivision requirements

Requirements relating to the overall subdivision process, urban planning and other council utilities and services can be found in each council's subdivision codes and policy documents. Reference shall be made to these documents and their requirements when using this document.

3.2 Legislative and regulatory requirements

The requirements of this *Regional Specification for Water Services* (R.Spec) shall be read subject to the provisions of the latest versions and amendments of any applicable legislation and regulations, including, but not limited to:

- (a) Building Act 2004, Building Regulations 1992, and New Zealand Building Code (NZBC)
- (b) Civil Defence Emergency Management Act 2002
- (c) Energy Efficiency and Conservation Act 2000
- (d) Fire and Emergency New Zealand Act 2017
- (e) Water Services Act 2021
- (f) Health and Safety at Work Act 2015 and related regulations
- (g) Land Drainage Act 1908
- (h) Local Government Act 1974 and Local Government Act 2002, and related council by-laws and policies
- (i) Resource Management Act 1991, including all applicable National Environmental Standards, regulations and regional and territorial planning documents
- (j) Utilities Access Act 2010, National Code of Practice for Utility Operators' Access to Transport Corridor and the Installation of Utility Structures on Railway Land
- (k) Electricity Act 1992, Electricity (Hazards from Trees) Regulations 2003

Other documents are referenced throughout this document at the relevant section.

3.3 Testing and inspection records

Unless otherwise stated, if records of testing and inspections are required, these records shall be provided to Wellington Water as part of the project completion and as-built documentation.

4 GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS

The following specifications shall be read in conjunction with the drainage and water supply specifications. They contain items that are relevant to both activities and are presented here to avoid duplication.

4.1 Health and safety obligations

The requirements of the Health and Safety at Work Act 2015 and the Health and Safety at Work Regulations 2016 shall be observed at all times.

In particular, under Section 43 of the Health and Safety at Work Act all developers must, so far as is reasonably practicable, ensure that the way all plant or structure is installed, constructed, or commissioned is done so without the risk to the health and safety of persons who:

- (a) Construct or install the plant or structure.
- (b) Use the plant or structure at a workplace for the purpose it was installed, constructed or installed.
- (c) Carries out any reasonably foreseeable activity for the proper use, decommissioning, or dismantling of plant, or demolition or disposal of the structure.
- (d) Are in the vicinity of the workplace and whose health and safety may be affected by a use of an activity referred to in paragraphs a) to c) above.

Contractors and construction staff must meet their obligations under the Health and Safety at Work Act. For Wellington Water projects, this means complying with any minimum personal protective equipment requirements and mandated work practices, as well as any contractual obligations.

Designers, contractors and construction staff working for Wellington Water on assets under Wellington Water's control must comply with Wellington Water's minimum health and safety standards, which are available on the Wellington Water webpage.

4.1.1 Immunisations

All staff physically working on the wastewater or water supply networks must comply with the immunisations in **Table 4-1**.

- (a) The following testing treatment and immunisation regime shall be adhered to:
 - (i) **Hepatitis A.** If a blood test proves the presence of antibodies, no vaccination is required. If no antibodies are detected, immunisation using appropriate vaccine shall be carried out.
 - (ii) **Hepatitis B.** If a blood test proves the presence of antibodies, no vaccination is required. If no antibodies are detected, three consecutive vaccinations at monthly intervals shall be administered, followed by a blood test after one month.
- (b) No contractor's staff employed on other sites involving work in or on any river, drain, or sewer, shall be allowed to carry out work on the water supply network unless permanently transferred and undergoing the above tests and vaccinations.

- (c) Clearance Certificates, signed by a registered medical practitioner, shall be sent to Wellington Water at the first opportunity.
- (d) Where the contractor's employees have already been certified, the contractor shall submit a list of names of such persons for checking. If new persons are engaged during the progress of the work, the contractor shall seek Wellington Water's direction as to what work they may be engaged upon pending production of a certificate.
- (e) No person will be employed in making connections to existing water mains unless that person has clearance. Wellington Water reserves the right to order from the Site, at any time, any person for whom a satisfactory clearance has not been obtained.
- (f) Workers are to immediately report the onset of any gastrointestinal illness. Such a worker is to be placed immediately on work not involving the handling of distribution components until free from diarrhoea for 48 hours, and with specific conditions (including Hepatitis A, Shigella, Typhoid and Cholera), a medical certificate of clearance is to be obtained.

Table 4-1 – Required immunisations

Network type	Immunisation	Frequency
Water supply	Hepatitis A	If no antibodies present ¹
	Hepatitis B	If no antibodies present ¹
	Polio	Every 10 years
	Typhoid	Every 3 years
	Tetanus	If not up to date ²
Wastewater	Hepatitis A	If no antibodies present ¹
	Hepatitis B	If no antibodies present ¹
	Tetanus	If not up to date ²
	Measles, Mumps and Rubella	If not up to date ²
	Polio	Every 10 years
Stormwater	No specific requirements	

¹ Refer to **Section 4.1.1 Immunisations**

² Based on Ministry of Health guidelines.

4.2 Environmental management

Where construction work is being carried out on behalf of Wellington Water, environmental management plans are required, and the following considerations are required as a minimum.

The three waters network shall be designed so that no harm shall occur to the environment during construction, operation, maintenance, or demolition of the network.

4.2.1 Water ponding/stormwater management

The following applies to water ponding and stormwater management:

- (a) Water ponding in the trench shall be prevented by means such as pumping and fluming.
- (b) Discharge of sediment laden water where it may enter water may need approval from GWRC or Wellington Water.
 - (i) Refer to the regional plan for rules regarding discharges to land where it cannot enter water (including groundwater in an aquifer protection area), or to water, or to the stormwater network. Discharges may require a resource consent from GWRC or written approval from Wellington Water.
 - (ii) Discharge to the wastewater network needs written approval from Wellington Water and may also need a trade waste consent.
- (c) When working in the road reserve:
 - (i) The stormwater network shall be maintained and operated in accordance with the requirements of the NCOPUATTC.
 - (ii) The requirements of the NCOPUATTC shall be complied with at all times.

4.2.2 Noise control

The following applies to noise control:

- (a) Compliance is required at all times with standards for noise for the proposed activity and zone as defined in the District Plan, otherwise consent will be required under the Resource Management Act 1991.
- (b) The best practical means of reducing the noise of continuous use equipment to affected people shall be employed at all times.
- (c) The continuous noise level at residential and commercial property boundaries shall not exceed the ambient level by more than 10 dB(A).
- (d) Any directions from the Council's environmental noise control unit shall be complied with.
- (e) The requirements under Section 5.3.5, *Noise and Vibration Management*, of the NCOPUATTC and the Corridor Manager's Work Access Permit and Local and Special Conditions shall be complied with at all times.

4.2.3 Odour control

The following applies to odour control:

- (a) Foul or offensive odours emitting from the works or other sources as a result of any construction work shall be minimised at all times.
- (b) No foul or offensive odours shall be emitted from the works or other sources as a result of the work outside normal working hours or at other times when the site is not occupied.
- (c) Potential odour situations (from or adjacent to the works site) shall be immediately reported to the "On-call Officer, Pollution Response" GWRC at 0800 496 734.

4.3 Working near trees

Where work is:

- (a) In the road reserve, all work and activities must comply with the requirements of the NCOPUATTC.
- (b) On private property, the works must comply with the agreement of the landowner, as well as:
 - (i) Comply with the rules in the relevant district plan related to the affected trees.
 - (ii) Comply with the Electricity (Hazards from Trees) Regulations 2003, where applicable, when working within the canopy of trees.
 - (iii) Comply with the requirements of NZECP 34¹ when using machinery close to overhead conductors (refer also to the Approved Code of Practice for Safety and Health in Tree Work: Part 1 Arboriculture² and Part 2: Maintenance of Trees Around Power Lines³).

Before any tree is affected by an excavation, the council arborist and private property owner, if relevant, must be contacted to liaise on the extent and nature of the work. Where the tree is to be kept, the following shall apply:

- (c) Where the branches or roots of any tree may be harmed by the proposed activities, these shall only be trimmed by the council arborist or at their approval. Generally, roots shall first be exposed by hand digging, or hydro jetting.
- (d) A tree-protection zone (as a guide, this is the area under the drip line of a tree or within a radius of half the height of the tree, whichever is greater) must be established by a qualified and experienced arborist (refer to **Standard Detail DR08 – Tree Dripline**).
- (e) A temporary fence must be erected for the duration of the works.
- (f) No materials, equipment, liquids or vehicles are to be positioned, and no work is to be carried out within the tree-protection zone without the prior approval of a qualified and experienced arborist.
- (g) All care should be taken to minimise run-off from chemical / material storage sites.

4.4 Working with asbestos cement pipes

4.4.1 Design for replacement of asbestos cement pipes

The following applies to the design for replacement of asbestos cement (AC) pipes:

- (a) So far as reasonably practicable, the designer shall not design for the on-line replacement of the AC pipe unless the AC is to be removed from the ground.

¹ New Zealand Electrical code of practice for electrical safe distances. NZECP 34:2001. Manager, Standards and Safety, Ministry of Consumer Affairs.

² Approved Code of Practice for Safety and Health in Tree Work: Part 1 Arboriculture. WorkSafe New Zealand. 2012

³ Approved Code of Practice for Safety and Health in Tree Work: Part 2: Maintenance of Trees Around Power Lines. Department of Labour. 1996

Methods that are considered unacceptable include, but are not limited to, pipe bursting of AC pipes.

- (b) Any excavation, removal, and disposal of the AC pipe shall be carried out in accordance with the Approved Code of Practice for the Management and Removal of Asbestos⁴, and the Health and Safety at Work (Asbestos) Regulations 2016.
- (c) Where an AC pipeline remains on site, the pipe's Asset ID, location and alignment shall be included within the supplied as-built drawings to allow Wellington Water's asset database to identify the pipeline as including a hazardous material.
 - (i) The AC pipe's physical condition shall be noted, as well as other details, such as whether it was capped, grouted, re-purposed or has experienced any other modification or treatment.

4.4.2 Working with AC pipes

The following applies to working with AC pipes:

- (a) The Approved Code of Practice for the Management and Removal of Asbestos⁵ and the Health and Safety at Work (Asbestos) Regulations 2016 shall be complied with when working with or coming in contact with AC pipes and fittings.
- (b) Personnel, when working with AC pipes and fittings, shall take all reasonable steps to prevent asbestos fibres from becoming airborne.
- (c) When dealing with asbestos materials, the contractor is advised to follow the instructions given below (as a minimum requirement):
 - (i) Health and Safety at Work (Asbestos) Regulations 2016 and
 - (ii) Approved Code of Practice: Management and Removal of Asbestos.
- (d) Cutting of AC pipe in a dry condition using a hand or power saw is not permitted.
- (e) Hydro-excavation near AC pipe is not permitted.
- (f) Personnel working with asbestos shall provide the necessary safety instructions to personnel, issue personal protection and equip personnel to safely work with material.
- (g) All AC pipe shall be placed in a suitable bag and disposed of at a landfill registered to accept asbestos products.

4.5 Excavation

4.5.1 General

The following applies to excavation:

- (a) Excavation shall only begin after all permissions and pre-possession documentation has been submitted and approved in writing by Wellington Water.

⁴ Approved code of practice: Management and removal of asbestos. WorkSafe New Zealand. 2016

⁵ Approved code of practice: Management and removal of asbestos. WorkSafe New Zealand. 2016

- (b) Excavation work shall comply with the relevant legislation and regulatory documents outlined in **Section 3 General Requirements**, as well as relevant sections of the most current version of the *Excavation Safety Good Practice Guidelines*.
- (c) Excavation risk assessments / planning must:
 - (i) Address:
 - 1. The risk of excavation collapse, including at any depth where it is necessary for a worker to perform tasks within the excavation with their head and shoulders below ground level,
 - 2. Fall from heights (e.g. personnel/equipment/loads),
 - 3. Edge protection.
 - (ii) Be in accordance with the requirements set out in (b) above.

Trenches:

- (d) Shall be of sufficient width and depth to permit dewatering, bedding, and pipe jointing to be carried out with adequate working room and in a safe manner. Minimum clearance between the pipe wall and the side of the trench shall be as detailed in Table 4.2 of AS/NZS 2566.2:2002 or Figure 4 of AS/NZS 3725:2007, or superseding documentation, as appropriate.
- (e) May be subject to conditions outlined by the Road Controlling Authority (RCA).

4.5.2 Definition of hard rock

Where the definition of hard rock is not specified in the contract, the default definition shall be taken as:

- (a) Hard rock is considered to be ground that cannot be removed in-situ using a 10 tonne excavator fitted with a rock bucket and requires other means of removal.

4.5.3 Excavated material

The following applies to the stockpiling and disposal of excavated material:

- (a) When dealing with excavated topsoil that is to be reused, it must be separately stacked, and measures must be taken to ensure that topsoil remains unmixed with clay or other deleterious matter. Similarly, turf that is to be reused shall be cut and safeguarded for later placement.
- (b) Stockpiling of excavated material alongside the trench must be at a distance in accordance with Excavation Safety Good Practice Guidelines.
- (c) Disposal of excavated material may require resource consent.

4.5.4 Trench dewatering

The following applies to trench dewatering:

- (a) Trench dewatering may require resource consent.
- (b) Where dewatering is required, the developer shall provide dewatering facilities so that pipe bedding, pipe laying, inspection of the pipe joints and backfilling can be carried out in a trench free of water before and after pipe installation. Where

dewatering is not feasible, please refer to **Section 4.7.3 High groundwater environment**.

- (c) Groundwater and foreign material shall not be allowed to enter the new pipe at any stage.
- (d) If the developer wants to use the new stormwater or wastewater pipeline for dewatering, and this is compliant with the applicable consents, then the developer should propose this as part of their dewatering plan.
- (e) Pump hoses, power cords, etc., used for dewatering shall not be run across the surface of any section of the roadway in use without adequate controls. Any slot or ditch required to carry these shall be constructed in accordance with the traffic control requirements and sealed, to provide a smooth surface for traffic, and be watertight. After the service is removed, the road surface shall be reinstated.

4.6 Typical trench arrangement

A typical trench arrangement is provided in **Figure 4-1** below.

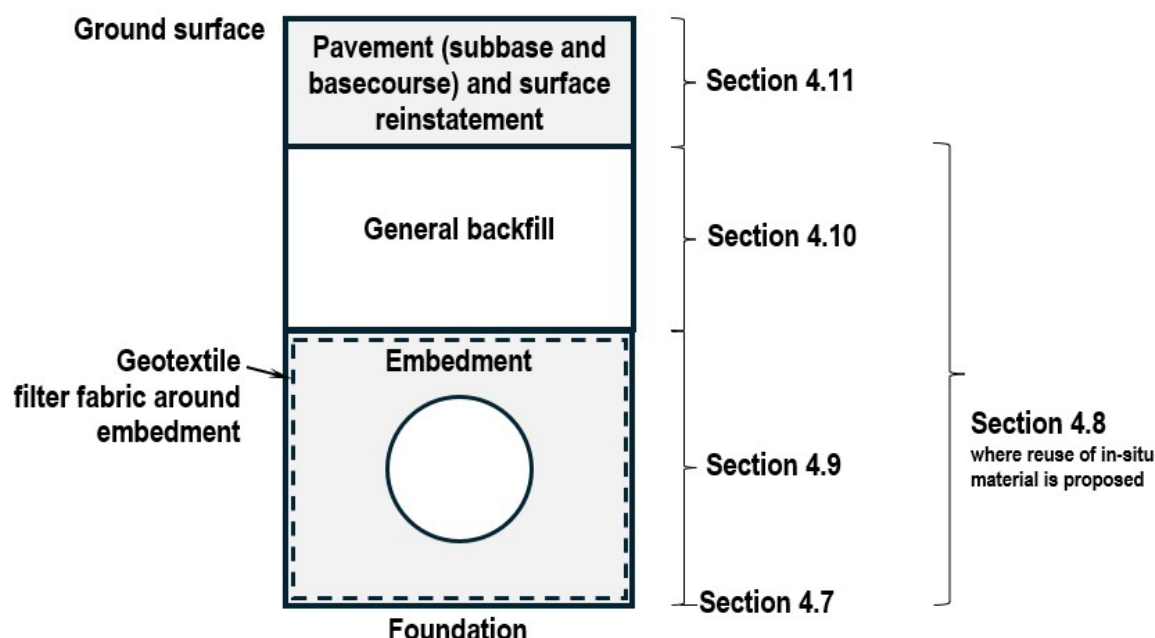


Figure 4-1 – Typical pipe trench arrangement

4.7 Trench foundation

4.7.1 Standard preparation of pipe trench foundation

The following applies to trench foundations for all pipes:

- (a) The foundation of the trench is to be checked for stability of the soil.
- (b) A robust trench foundation with sufficient allowable bearing capacity is required to resist loading from the bulk trench backfill and dynamic surcharge loads (typically traffic) at surface level.

- (c) A plate compactor is first run over the trench foundation to bind the surface and identify any obvious weak spots.
- (d) The in situ trench foundation shall be tested with a Scala penetrometer and must return a result of at least 4 blows per 50 mm of penetration. Where this cannot be achieved, an alternative requirement for the site-specific ground conditions may be approved. This must be verified using the method in **Appendix 5** of the *Regional Standard for Water Services*.
- (e) Scala testing shall be carried out at 10 m intervals along the trench invert, or at any apparent change in ground condition.
- (f) Soft, weak soil must be either strengthened, excavated and removed, or compacted to an acceptable standard (see **Section 4.7.2 Remedial measures for insufficient bearing capacity**).

4.7.2 Remedial measures for insufficient bearing capacity

Where the trench foundation level tested with a Scala penetrometer cannot achieve 4 blows per 50 mm of penetration, the following applies:

- (a) If the applied loads at the trench foundation level results in soil stresses greater than the allowable bearing capacity, the in situ material will not provide a suitable trench foundation.
- (b) Following failure to achieve the required compaction, the trench foundation should be further compacted with a plate compactor and retested with Scala penetrometer. If the required blows per 50 mm still cannot be achieved, Wellington Water may approve a lower minimum requirement.
- (c) Where the trench foundation must be remedied, the trench must be over excavated and poor material removed. Imported, compacted fill will be installed in a raft below the trench foundation level to provide the required support, as shown in the figure below. The depth of this raft will be determined by the depth at which the in situ ground has suitable bearing capacity (at least equal to the applied soil stress at that level). Wellington Water will provide further direction if this depth exceeds 300 mm below the foundation level.
- (d) Imported fill for the raft will generally be AP65 (graded material) compacted after placement to 6 blows per 50 mm.

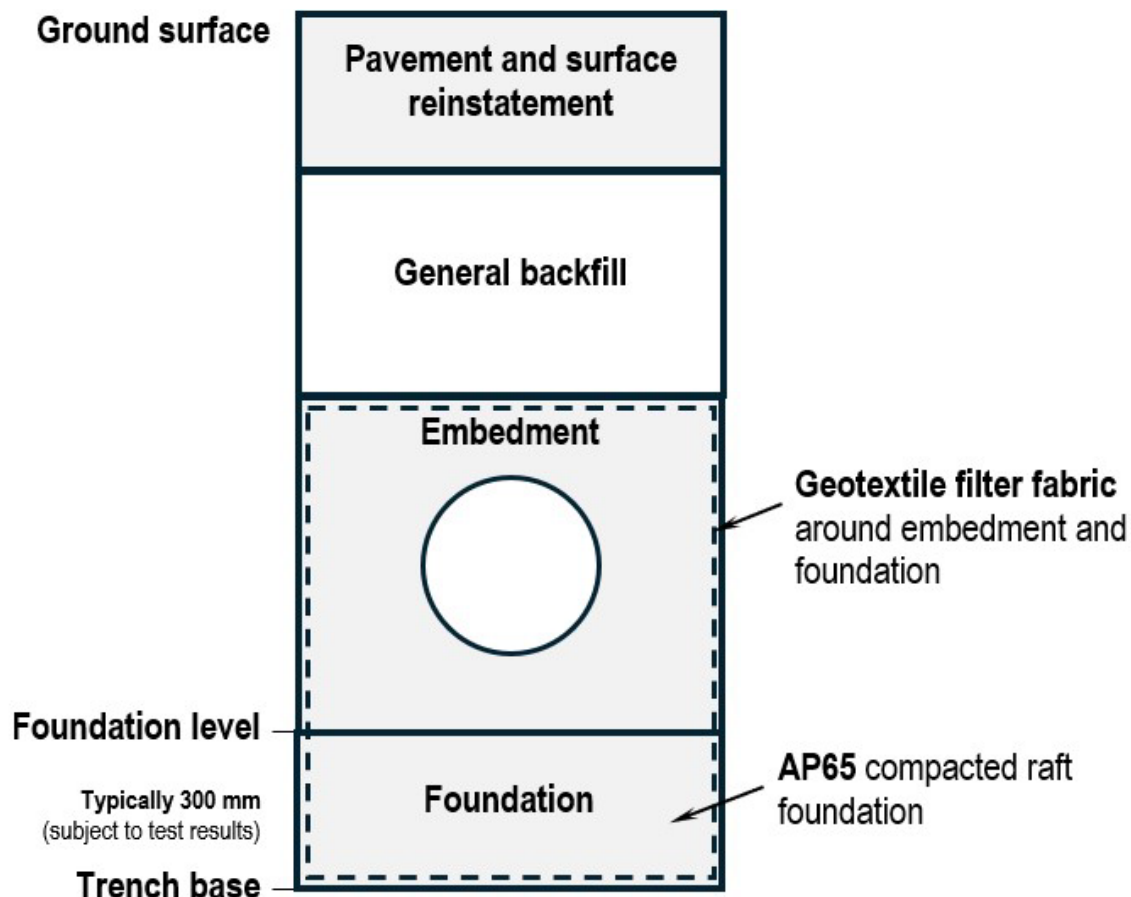


Figure 4-2 – Typical trench arrangement with a raft foundation constructed of imported fill

4.7.3 High groundwater environment

The following applies to loads in a high groundwater environment:

- (a) Compaction of AP65 (or other basecourse) can be difficult below the water table due to the fines content of the material. The trench should be dewatered to install the raft arrangement as shown in **Figure 4-2** in accordance with the requirements of **Section 4.5.4 Trench dewatering**.
- (b) Where dewatering is not feasible on site, it is acceptable to install single size drainage material in the submerged portion of an increased thickness raft, provided the groundwater level is below the original trench foundation.
- (c) The soil stress from the applied loads acting on the in situ material beneath the base of the raft (including any drainage material) should be checked by Wellington Water to ensure it is less than the allowable bearing capacity for these soils. This will be determined by Wellington Water using the procedure outlined in **Appendix 5** of the *Regional Standard for Water Services*.
- (d) If AP65 is being used above 10 mm drainage material with a typical grading curve, no fabric or other separation is required between these materials. Geotextile filter fabric requirements for other material combinations are to be checked using the procedure outlined in **Appendix 6** of the *Regional Standard for Water Services*. Geotextile materials and construction requirements shall be in accordance with

Transit New Zealand F/7 specification. For trench surround, Wellington Waters specific requirements are Strength Class C, non-woven fabric with pore size less than or equal to 180 micrometres and flow rate greater or equal to 50 L/m²/s. The minimum overlap shall be 500mm.

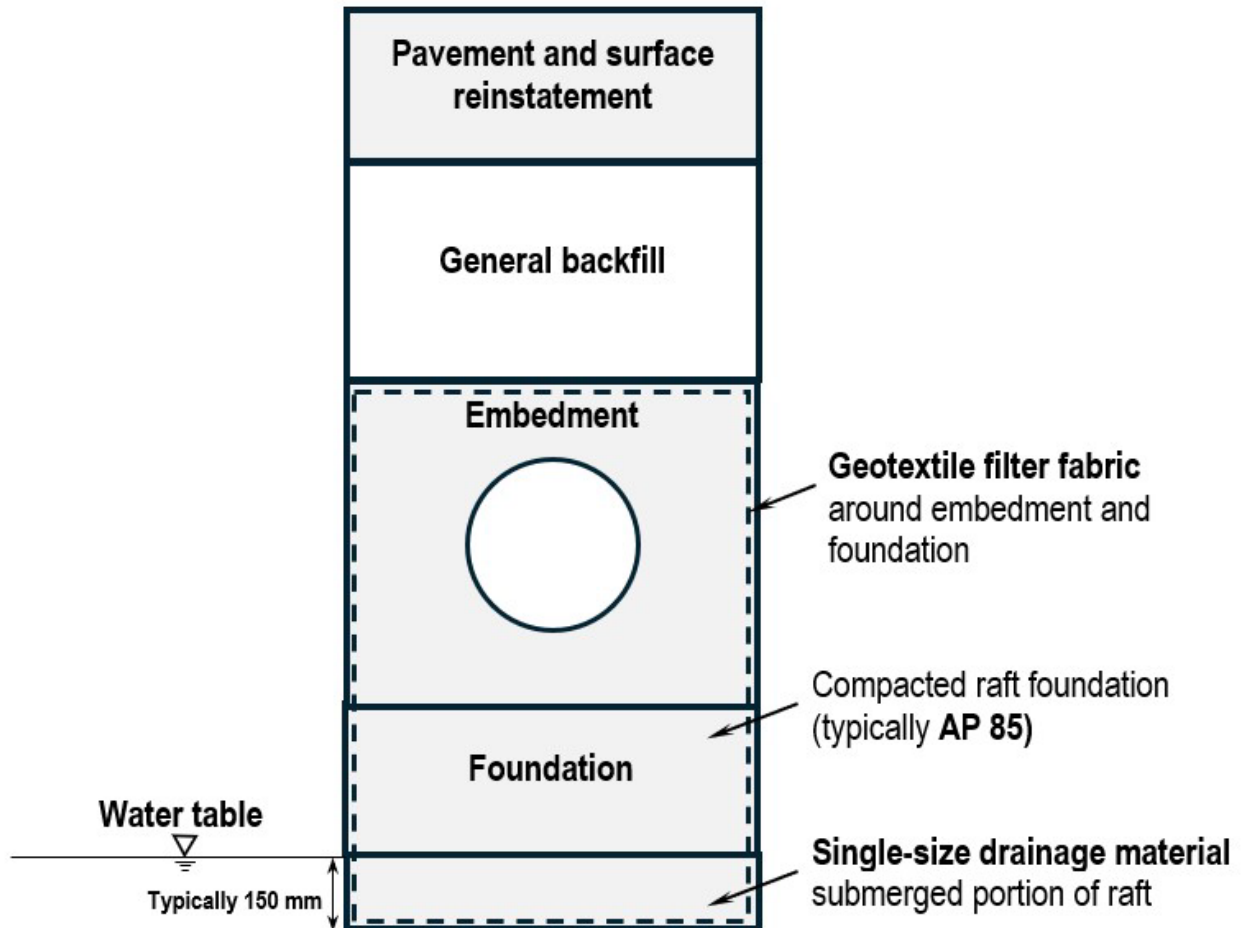


Figure 4-3 – Typical trench arrangement where the site has a high groundwater table

4.7.4 Extremely poor ground

The following applies to loads in poor ground conditions:

- If the in situ ground at the trench base is particularly poor (i.e. very soft, puggy clay), then AP65 will not be suitable as the raft construction material, as the compaction effort will press the raft material into the soft pug rather than compact it.
- In this instance, the trench must be over excavated and the poor ground removed. Refer to **Figure 4-4** for a typical detail of this arrangement. The additional depth of excavation shall be reinstated as follows:

- (i) The raft shall be constructed from well-graded quarry forkings or river run gravel with a large maximum stone size (typically all passing 100 mm sieve, 1% max. passing 0.5 mm) or equivalent material, as agreed with Wellington Water.
 - 1. This material is used as it can be compacted to form a bridging arrangement (raft) over poor ground.
 - 2. Due to the larger particle size components, quarry forkings and river run material requires significantly more compactive effort compared to AP65 or other general graded backfill. This will require heavy duty shoring or trench boxes to be installed with wider trench widths.
- (ii) The raft will typically be installed with a depth of 300-400 mm, depending on the maximum stone size.
- (iii) A blinding layer of graded material of a depth appropriate to the material is to be placed over the raft and compacted for the purpose of achieving a Clegg reading (e.g. 150 mm for AP65 or 100mm for AP40).
- (iv) Due to the low fines content of the quarry forkings and river run material, geotextile filter fabric will be required between the binding layer and the pipe embedment to mitigate against particle migration into the embedment materials.
 - 1. Geotextile materials and construction requirements shall be in accordance with Transit New Zealand F/7 specification. For trench surround, Wellington Waters specific requirements are nonwoven, Strength Class C, non-woven fabric with pore size less than or equal to 180 micrometres and flow rate greater or equal to 50 L/m²/s. The minimum overlap shall be 500 mm.
 - 2. If the contractor would prefer to delete the geotextile filter fabric, this would need to be verified using the procedure outlined in **Appendix 6** of the *Regional Standard for Water Services*.
- (c) Post-construction Clegg Hammer testing is required to demonstrate the quarry forkings or river run material has achieved compaction. The target test reading should be determined using the procedure outlined in **Appendix 5** of the *Regional Standard for Water Services*.
 - (i) Clegg Hammer testing is to be undertaken only where a blinding layer has been installed on top of the quarry forkings or river run material. Avoid taking readings directly on a stone or boulder.
 - (ii) The contractor shall obtain approval from Wellington Water that the post-construction testing is being undertaken at appropriate locations; multiple readings will generally give a reliable result with outliers discarded.
 - (iii) Clegg Hammer readings are only representative for the most recent compacted layer.

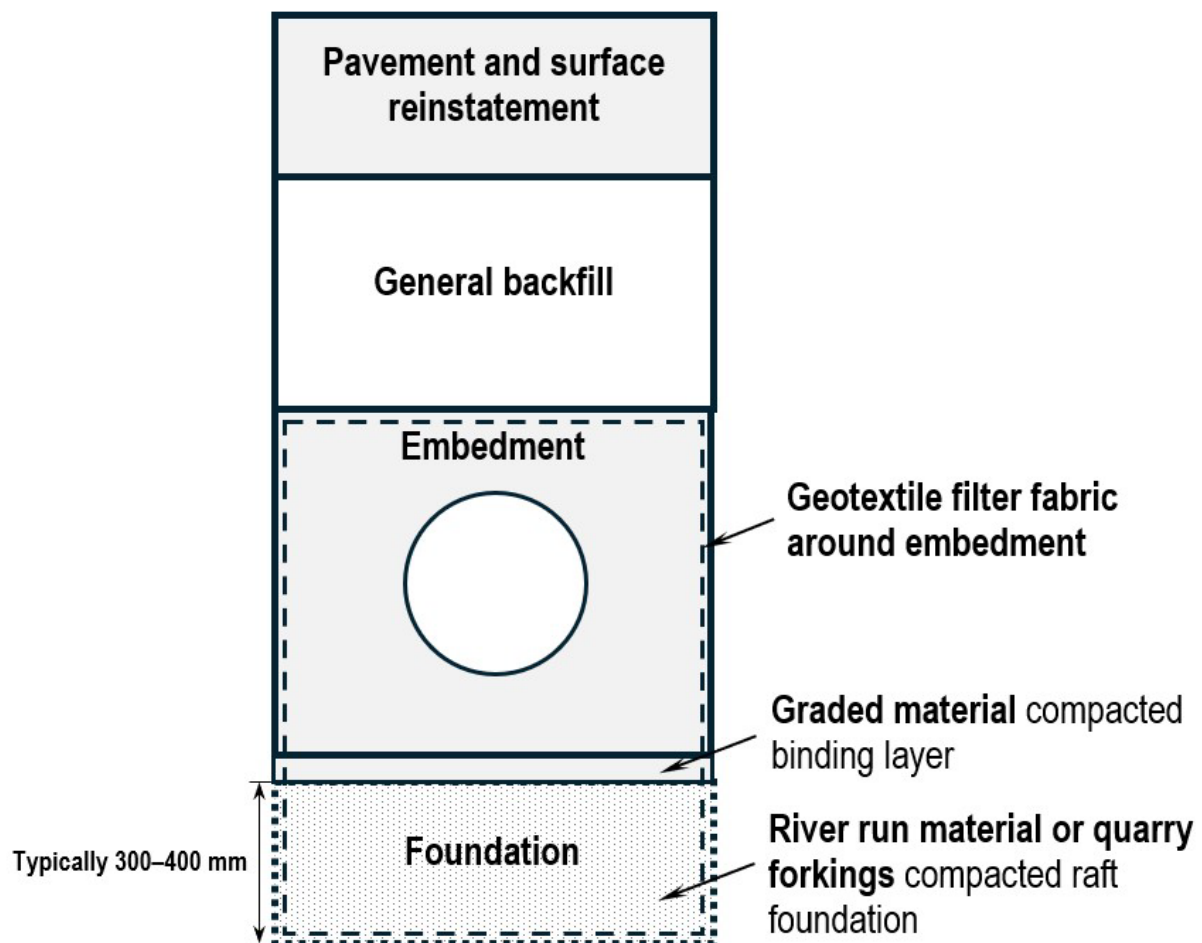


Figure 4-4 – Typical trench arrangement where the in situ ground is extremely poor

4.7.5 Post-construction testing

The following applies to testing of the pipe foundation:

- Compaction testing (typically Scala for basecourse materials or Clegg Hammer for quarry forkings or river run with large stones) should be recorded at regular intervals (typically 10 m) at the foundation level along the full pipeline alignment.
- See **Section 4.7.1(f) Standard preparation of pipe trench foundation** regarding locations of soft, weak soil.
- Compaction testing shall be conducted after compaction of the trench foundation and before preparation for laying and compacting the pipe embedment.
- Scala measurements shall be taken to depth of 300 mm below the trench foundation level. No measurement shall be recorded for the top 50 mm.
- Wellington Water or their representative shall witness a sufficient number of tests to confirm the necessary compaction is being achieved.
- Site compaction test records shall include (this applies for all compaction testing throughout trench depth):
 - Site name.

- (ii) Contract number (where applicable).
- (iii) Contractor's name (where applicable).
- (iv) Location along trench as a chainage from a known point.
- (v) Test depth and trench level being tested.

4.8 Reuse of in situ material

4.8.1 Compaction and testing for pipe embedment

The following applies to the reuse of in situ material for embedment. See **Section 4.9 Pipeline embedment** for general requirements for embedment material.

- (a) Typically embedment is imported. There are opportunities to re-use excavated material as pipeline embedment in sand environments only.
- (b) Wellington Water must approve the reuse of excavated material for pipe embedment.
- (c) The compaction and testing requirements for native sand embedment material are outlined in **Section 4.9.4.3 Graded embedment material testing**.
- (d) If the in situ material changes, the material parameters and compaction requirements must be re-evaluated.

4.8.2 Compaction and testing for general backfill

The following applies to the reuse of in situ material for general backfill. See **Section 4.10 General backfill** for general requirements for backfill material.

- (a) Where reuse of material is proposed for backfill in a trafficable area, placement and compaction must be in accordance with the NCOPUATTC and NCOPUATTC local conditions.
- (b) The level of compaction testing and minimum compaction targets to be achieved outside of the transport corridor will be determined by Wellington Water. The compaction achieved must be at least equal to that recorded in the adjacent in situ ground, tested by a Scala penetrometer or Clegg Hammer.

4.9 Pipeline embedment

4.9.1 Flexible pipe embedment

The following applies to embedment of flexible pipes:

- (a) The structural and embedment installation for flexible pipes should be in accordance with AS/NZS 2566.2.
- (b) A standard embedment drawing for flexible pipes can be found in **Standard Detail DR03 – Typical Trench and Waterstop Details**.
- (c) Flexible pipe materials (e.g. PE, PVC, steel, ductile-iron) deflect to an elliptical shape when put under applied loads, and in doing so, mobilise sufficient lateral earth pressures in the adjacent ground to resist the applied loads and control the cross-sectional deflection.

- (d) The embedment zone for flexible pipes can be subdivided into the subzones shown in **Figure 4-5**.

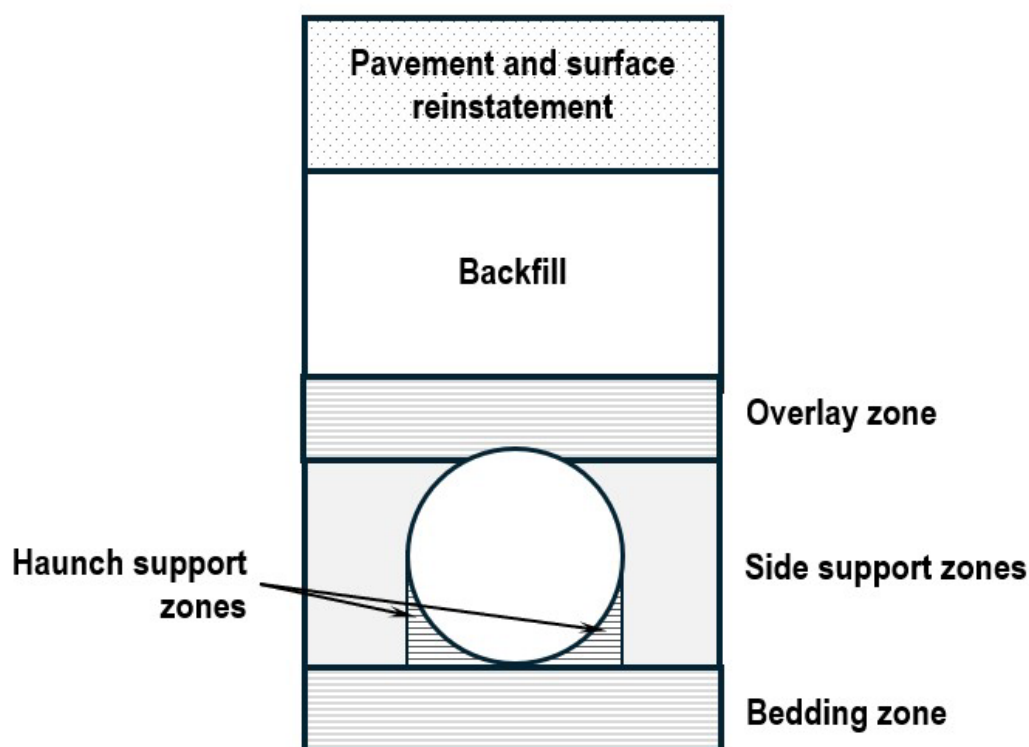


Figure 4-5 – Embedment for flexible pipes

4.9.1.1 Bedding, haunching and side zone material for flexible pipes

The following applies to embedment material for flexible pipes:

- (a) Bedding, haunching and surround material for flexible pipes shall be a selected cohesionless material that complies with the grading curves of AS/NZS 2566.2. Typical material compliance with this specification is outlined in **Table 4-2** to **Table 4-6**.
- (b) The material for all pipes shall be free of organics and sharp, angular aggregates.

Table 4-2 – Bedding, haunching and surrounds material for flexible pipes

In situ soil environment	Material
In a sand environment	Native Sand Imported sand (Table 4-3)
In all other environments	AP20* for > DN 150 AP10* for DN 63 to DN 150 AP5* for < DN 63 20 mm down, well graded gravel (Table 4-6)

* Single-size aggregate should be used where strict control of grading is essential. Pea-metal and single graded equivalents are acceptable; examples are given in **Table 4-4** and **Table 4-5**.

Table 4-3 – Imported sand material grading limits

Sieve size (mm)	Weight passing (%)
4.75	100
2.36	90-100
1.18	85-100
0.60	70-100
0.30	50-100
0.15	0-40
0.075	0-5

Source: Table G3 AS/NZS 2566.2

Table 4-4 – 5 to 14 mm drainage chip grading limits

Sieve size (mm)	Weight passing (%)
13.2	98-100
9.5	24-42
4.75	0-3
0.15	0-2

Source: Drainage General Conditions of Specification, WCC (2006)

Table 4-5 – Asphalt aggregate 8mm down grit typical grading

Sieve size (mm)	Weight passing (%)
6.7	100
4.75	92
2.36	29
1.18	12
0.075	12

Source: Horokiwi Quarries (2015)

Table 4-6 – Grading limits for bedding/surround material (typically used for bulk water pipes)

Sieve size (mm)	Weight passing (%)
6.7	100
4.75	92
2.36	29
1.18	12
0.075	12

Source: Table 6 AS/NZS 3725:2007 and Table G1 AS/NZS 2566.2:2002

4.9.1.2 Pipe surround for flexible pipes

The following applies to the pipe surround for flexible pipes:

- (a) The minimum embedment zone dimensions for flexible pipes are given in AS/NZS 2566.2 Table 4.2.
- (b) Careful placement and compaction of pipe embedment material to the specified embedment geometry is necessary to ensure the pipe is adequately supported. See **Section 4.9.4 Compaction and post-construction testing** for compaction requirements).

4.9.2 Rigid pipe embedment

The following applies to embedment of rigid pipes:

- (a) The structural and embedment design for rigid pipes should be in accordance with AS/NZS 3725.
- (b) A standard embedment drawing for rigid pipes can be found in **Standard Detail DR03 – Typical Trench and Waterstop Details**.
- (c) Rigid pipe materials (e.g. concrete, vitreous clay) have inherent structural strength with applied loads taken by the pipeline itself. The embedment for rigid pipes is designed to distribute loads evenly around the pipe and provide sufficient support beneath the pipe to resist the total vertical loads and prevent excessive settlement.
- (d) Because of this, pipe bedding, haunch and side zones are particularly important for rigid pipelines. These embedment subzones for rigid pipes are shown in **Figure 4-6**.

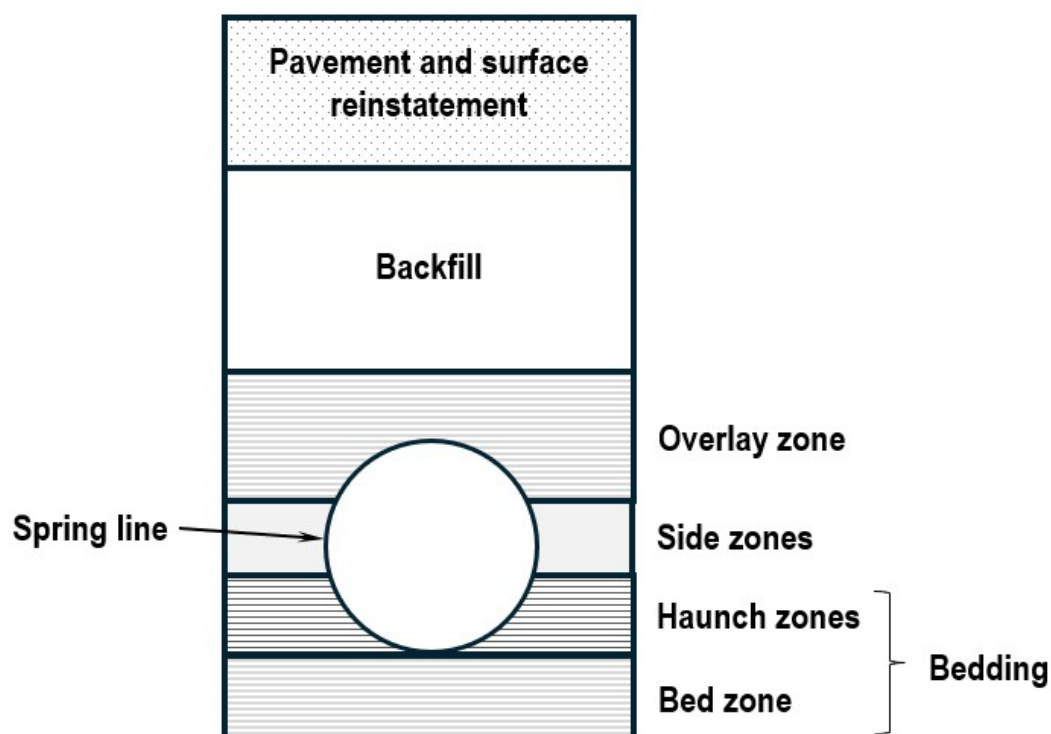


Figure 4-6 – Embedment for rigid pipes

4.9.2.1 Bedding, haunching and side zone material for rigid pipes

The following applies to material for rigid pipes:

- (a) The material to be used for bedding, haunching and side zone material shall comply with **Table 4-6**, or **Table 4-7** and **Table 4-8**. Suitability shall be verified using the procedures outlined in AS/NZS 3725.
- (b) Acceptable material within the grading limits will result in material that is well graded and free draining. Granular material that complies with this section, but that would break down when wetted, such as shale or conglomerates, are not suitable materials and shall not be used.
- (c) The pipe embedment material shall not contain any organic material.

Table 4-7 – Bedding, haunching and side zone material for rigid pipes

In situ soil environment	All rigid pipes	Reinforced concrete pipes greater than 450 mm internal dia. only
In sand:		
• Bedding and haunching	Native Sand	Native Sand
• Side zone	Native Sand	Native Sand
In all other environments:		
• Bedding and haunching	5-20 mm drainage*	5-40 mm drainage*
• Side zone	5-20 mm drainage*	5-40 mm drainage*

* Complying with **Table 4-8**.

Table 4-8 – Drainage bedding, haunching and side zone

Sieve size (mm)	5-20 mm drainage dry mass passing (%)	5-40 mm drainage dry mass passing (%)
53.0	-	100
37.5	-	98-100
26.5	100	-
19.0	98-100	27-45
13.2	-	-
9.5	12-30	5-22
4.75	0-5	0-5
0.15	0-3	0-3

4.9.2.2 Pipe surround for rigid pipes

The following applies to pipe surround for rigid pipes:

- (a) The minimum embedment zone dimensions for rigid pipes are given in AS/NZS 3725 Table 5.

- (b) A rebate shall be formed in the bedding below any collars such that the pipe is supported on the full length of the barrel as opposed to only the collar.
- (i) A minimum of 50 mm of bedding material is required below any pipe collars.

4.9.3 Geotextile filter fabric and migration of fines

The use of geotextile filter fabric around pipeline embedment is the default arrangement in all cases (also note the requirements of **Section 4.7.2 Remedial measures for insufficient bearing capacity**). However, it can be deleted from surrounding the pipeline embedment if:

- (a) The bedding and surround material meets the grading limits given in **Table 4-6**.
- (b) It can be shown that migration of fines will not occur. The limit of migration of fines can be determined using information provided by the quarry and the method outlined in the **Appendix 6** of the *Regional Standard for Water Services*.

4.9.4 Compaction and post-construction testing

The following applies to the compaction of pipe embedment:

- (a) The bed, haunch, side support and overlay shall be placed in a manner so that:
 - (i) Uniform distribution and compaction of bedding is achieved, especially under the haunches of the pipeline.
 - (ii) The pipeline position in the trench is maintained.
 - (iii) The pipeline level and grade are maintained.
 - (iv) The pipe and any pipe coatings are not damaged.

4.9.4.1 Graded material placement and compaction

The following applies to graded material placement and compaction:

- (a) The contractor shall ensure that bedding along the trench edges is well compacted.
- (b) The material shall be compacted in layers.
- (c) Heavy machine compaction may be used to compact bedding below the pipeline.
- (d) Light machine compaction, achieved only by hand operated machinery, shall be used to compact bedding in the overlay or around the haunches and the spring-line of the pipe.
 - (i) Except that heavier machine compaction may be used when compacting bedding that is more than 150 mm clear of the spring-line of the pipe, as shown in **Figure 4-7**.
- (e) The contractor is to ensure the compaction effort (and plant) applied will not cause damage to the pipe.

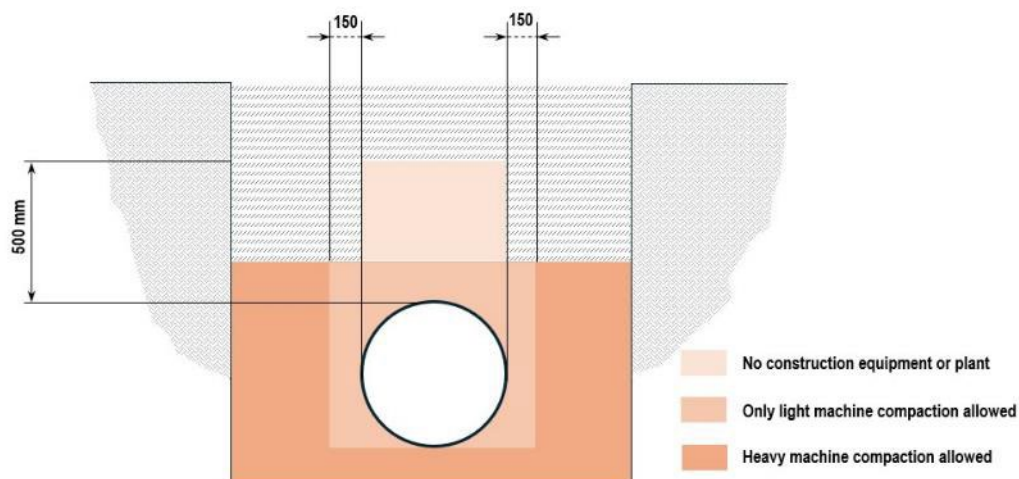


Figure 4-7 – Restrictions on use of heavy machine compaction

4.9.4.2 Single size gravel placement and compaction

The following applies to post-construction testing for single size gravel, which is drainage metal, processed aggregate or similar product. Grading limits for these materials are shown **Table 4-3** to **Table 4-5**:

- (a) This material is often referred to as 'self-compacting' fill. This is a misleading phrase and implies that no additional compaction is required at installation stage. In fact, the material must be installed in discrete layers (of approximately 150 mm) and hand-tamped to ensure it is worked into all voids present below and around the pipeline, particularly in the haunch zones.
- (b) Proper placement is critical for a single size embedment.
- (c) No suitable field test for compaction is available.
- (d) The following is critical for quality assurance:
 - (i) Correct placement and workmanship as per the specification.
 - (ii) Monitored by the Contractor's supervising engineer, recorded on daily inspection sheets and in site photographs showing correct methodology has been used for each pipe.
 - (iii) Adequate material crushing strength to resist applied loads, durability (wetting and drying) and other material requirements as specified in the relevant design codes (such as AS/NZS 2566.2 or AS/NZS 3725).
 - (iv) Quarry to provide the supporting evidence for (iii) above.

4.9.4.3 Graded embedment material testing

The following applies to post-construction testing for graded embedment materials (**Table 4-6**), which are graded gravels, sands, and other material:

- (a) Graded embedment shall be compacted to achieve the mechanical properties required under AS/NZS 3725 and AS/NZS 2566.
- (b) An acceptable compaction is to achieve a minimum of 4 blows per 50 mm with a Scala penetrometer.

- (c) Where this cannot be achieved, a suitable test for compaction is to achieve at least 95% MDD of a lab based modified Proctor test (the percentage of MDD achieved on-site may exceed 100% MDD).
 - (i) The field test readings need to be calibrated to the MDD for the proposed embedment material prior to installation for in situ soils, and discuss with the supplier for imported fill.
 - (ii) To reduce the cost of field testing, it is acceptable to use a Scala penetrometer calibrated to the required percentage of MDD.
- (d) Compaction testing should be executed and recorded at 10 m intervals for the full embedment depth, along the full pipeline alignment. Wellington Water may approve an increased interval length if representative tests at greater intervals are providing consistent results.
- (e) It is preferable that compaction testing be completed for the full embedment depth.
- (f) Where there are concerns about striking the pipe during testing, it will be acceptable to test to the top of the embedment provided that:
 - (i) The embedment material is the same as the general backfill material (e.g., native sand in sand environments).
 - (ii) The Developer has demonstrated a satisfactory technique for installation of embedment material as observed by Wellington Water on site during construction monitoring.
 - (iii) The Developer can demonstrate adequate compaction throughout the backfill for the full pipeline alignment at intervals as per **Section 4.9.4.3(d) Graded embedment material testing**.
 - (iv) The Developer accepts the additional risk associated with not testing the embedment compaction.
- (g) Wellington Water or their representative shall witness in person a sufficient number of tests to be satisfied that the necessary compaction has been achieved.

4.9.5 Concrete bedding

4.9.5.1 Application

The following applies to the application of concrete bedding (cradle):

- (a) Concrete bedding shall not be used for flexible pipeline materials.
- (b) Concrete bedding is not typically specified for concrete pipe embedment under AS/NZS 3725; however, it may be necessary where a particularly high bedding factor is required.
- (c) Graded material is preferable for all rigid pipe applications (see **Section 4.9.2 Rigid pipe embedment**); special allowance should be sought from Wellington Water prior to specifying concrete bedding.
- (d) Pipe bedding performs a different function to the pipe trench foundation and is not interchangeable.

4.9.5.2 Requirements

The following applies to concrete bedding requirements:

- (a) Effective performance of concrete bedding is reliant on a sound trench foundation. This can be achieved through the methodology outlined in **Section 4.7 Trench foundation** or by using a blinding layer of weak concrete at the trench foundation level.
- (b) Concrete bedding shall extend at least 150 mm either side of the pipe and shall have a thickness no less than 100 mm or 0.25 x pipe OD (whichever is greater).
- (c) Pipes with collars shall be supported at their collar by a 20 mm thick H4 treated softwood block and the lower 90-degree arc of the barrel hand packed with concrete.
- (d) Flush jointed pipes shall be supported at the joint by a 50 mm thick H4 treated softwood block and the lower 90-degree arc of the pipe barrel hand packed with concrete to ensure joints remain aligned during laying and backfilling.
- (e) The surface of any concrete already hardened shall be chipped, washed and brushed clean, and shall have a layer of cement grout brushed before new concrete is placed on it.
- (f) In wet trenches, the concrete bed shall be supported on each side by firmly fixed timber shutters, and a drainage channel shall be formed outside these. Water shall be kept below the bottom of the bedding by pumping from sumps or by other approved means.
- (g) No concrete shall be placed into running water. Concrete may be placed to displace still water if permitted in writing from Wellington Water.
- (h) Concrete used for pipe bedding shall have a minimum compressive strength of 20 MPa after 28 days.
- (i) All concrete shall be allowed to set for at least 24 hours before any loads from pipelaying, backfilling, etc are applied.

4.9.6 Concrete surround

4.9.6.1 Application

The following applies to the application of concrete surround:

- (a) Concrete surround is not typically required (or permitted) for flexible pipe materials. Project-specific approval should be sought from Wellington Water prior to specification.
- (b) Concrete surrounding of concrete and earthenware drains will not normally be permitted.

4.9.6.2 Requirements

The following applies to concrete surround requirements:

- (a) Where concrete surrounding is specified, then, except where the pipe is under a building, there shall be a physical break in the surround at each pipe joint to

maintain pipe flexibility. This shall be created by the insertion of a plywood spacer (typically 18 mm thick) shaped to the pipe barrel and placed on the pipe barrel immediately adjacent to the collar of the connecting pipe.

- (b) Pipes laid on a concrete cradle or concrete surrounded shall be supported at the collar on H4 treated softwood blocks (for flush jointed concrete pipes, the blocks shall be placed at the joint).
- (c) Concrete used for pipe cradles and surrounds shall have a minimum compressive strength of 20 MPa after 28 days.
- (d) Where concrete surrounding is specific for flexible pipeline materials, the pipe shall be wrapped in a soft, compressible material to provide a transition to the rigid concrete surround.
- (e) For plastic pipe materials operating under pressure, steel reinforcement will be required in the concrete surround to carry the forces transferred from the pipeline.

4.10 General backfill

4.10.1 General

The following general guidelines apply to backfilling of an excavation above the embedment:

- (a) No backfilling shall be carried out until the laying and jointing of the lines have been approved in writing by Wellington Water or their representative.
- (b) Large vibrating rollers shall not be used within 500 mm of the top of pipes.
- (c) At all times during backfilling, the contractor must ensure that the pipe coating and protective wrapping are not damaged in any way.

4.10.2 Backfill material

4.10.2.1 Road reserve and private drives

The following applies to backfilling road reserves and private drives (including trafficable paved areas):

- (a) Any trench shall be backfilled in accordance with NCOPUATTC and NCOPUATTC local conditions.

4.10.2.2 Private property

Where backfilling is in private property (excluding private drives and paved areas), and unless otherwise specified in the approved drawings, general backfill material (see **Table 4-9**) shall be:

- (a) Dry and free of rocks and organic and deleterious material.
- (b) Placed uniformly and compacted to the specified relative compaction for the material.
- (c) For non-cohesive material, compacted as outlined in **Section 4.10.3 Compaction and post-construction testing**.

- (d) Where the finished trench surface settles below the level of the adjacent ground, the level shall be raised with additional material consistent with that used in the initial reinstatement, and surface made good.

Table 4-9 – Backfill material for private properties

In situ soil environment	Backfill material
Sand	Sand
Other – non-trafficked	GAP 40 or GAP 65 or suitable excavated material

4.10.3 Compaction and post-construction testing

The following applies to backfill placed above the embedment material (for buried flexible pipelines) or above the surround (for buried rigid pipelines):

- Placement and compaction shall be as per the NCOPUATTC and NCOPUATTC local conditions.
- A consistent level of compaction shall be achieved across each layer of backfill.
- Compaction measurements shall not be taken in the outside edge of the trench but taken in the middle 50% of the trench width.
- Compaction shall be measured by Scala penetrometer.
- A Clegg Hammer may be used as a cursory test, but Scala results are required as evidence of suitable compaction. The conversion of number of blows per 50 mm penetration to Clegg Hammer results is given in **Table 4-10**.
- Wellington Water or their representative shall witness in person a sufficient number of tests to be satisfied that the necessary compaction has been achieved, but not closer than 200 mm above the pipe.
- Ideally, to avoid the formation of voids, trench shoring should be raised above the layer that is about to be compacted before compaction is undertaken. However, it is acceptable to lift trench plates and sheet piles after compaction provided all voids have been filled on both sides of the plates and sheet piles.

Table 4-10 – Conversion between Scala penetrometer blows and Clegg Hammer results

Blows per 50 mm penetration	Indicative Clegg Hammer
7	CIV 35
4	CIV 25
3	CIV 15
2	CIV 10

4.11 Reinstatement

4.11.1 Pavement and surface reinstatement

The pavement layers and resurfacing of the trench shall, as a minimum, comply with the NCOPUATTC and NCOPUATTC local conditions or the appropriate subdivision code of practice.

All compaction and post-construction testing for pavement layers shall also be in accordance with **Section 4.10.3 Compaction and post-construction testing**. The same standards required for trafficable and non-trafficable in the road reserve shall apply to private property also, unless otherwise agreed in writing with the property owner.

From May to August inclusive, grassed areas shall be reinstated with imported turf or by reinstating the existing excavated turf or as required by subdivision consent conditions.

4.11.2 Marking of hydrants, valves, service valves and pavement

Any street markings disturbed by construction works shall be remarked as per the NCOPUATTC and the relevant council's Code of Practice.

4.11.2.1 Hydrants

Marking of hydrants shall (see also **Section 6.2.11.4 Hydrant valves**):

- (a) Comply with SNZ PAS 4509.
- (b) Be carried out within 24 hours of the pipeline being commissioned.
- (c) Include using yellow paint on the hydrant box lid and any concrete surround, the triangle near the carriageway centreline pointing at the hydrant and a circle if required.
- (d) Include reflective blue pavement markers to be installed on the centreline as per the standard.

4.11.2.2 Gate (sluice) valves

The following applies to marking of the surface box lids for gate valves:

- (a) The entire cover and top block shall be marked using non-slip, reflective, road marking paint that complies with NZTA M/07-
- (b) "Normally Shut" valves shall be painted red.
- (c) "Fire Service" valves shall be painted green.
- (d) Scour valves shall be painted blue.
- (e) Wastewater valve cover and blocks shall be painted orange, in a shade similar to RAL 2009 – Traffic Orange.
- (f) Gate valves shall be painted within 24 hours of commissioning of the pipeline.

4.11.2.3 Kerb markings

The following applies to the marking of service valves (see also **Section 6.2.11.5 Service pipe valves**):

- (a) Marking of the location of services valves shall be carried out within 2 weeks of commissioning of the pipeline or prior to vesting of the asset.
- (b) Service valve locations shall be marked on the point of the adjacent kerb closest to the valve.
- (c) They shall be identified by a "V" painted or cut into the top of the kerb with the point of the "V" pointing towards the valve location (it shall point toward the

carriageway for valves in the carriageway and the opposite direction for valves in the berm).

- (d) The cut “V” shall be a minimum of 100 mm long and be cut a minimum of 5 mm deep into the kerb. The painted “V” shall be marked by a 50 mm wide white painted “V” painted on the top of the kerb.

4.11.2.4 Obsolete markings, service covers and blocks

Obsolete markings, service covers and blocks shall be removed within 24 hours of the pipeline being taken out of service.

4.12 Building in close proximity to public pipelines

Written Approval is required from Wellington Water for any building work over or near a public pipe. Written Approval must be supported by an assessment against the requirements of **RSWS Sections 3.8.1(a) and (b)**. Written approval may be withheld if the function and operability of the public main are unduly compromised by the proposal.

Written approval is typically not granted for works in Porirua City Council or Upper Hutt City Council as these councils do not support building over public mains.

Where approval is granted the following applies:

- (a) Building in close proximity to public pipelines is defined in **Section 2.2.2 Definitions**.
- (b) This section should be read in conjunction with **Standard Detail DR09 – Building in Close Proximity** and the design standards in the *Regional Standard for Water Services*.
- (c) All load bearing foundations and piles should terminate below the building line restriction (BLR) and not within any prohibited zones for the type of foundations or piles (refer to **Standard Detail DR09 – Building in Close Proximity**).
- (d) All new or upgraded pipelines should be laid so that none of the existing foundations terminate above the BLR or within an applicable prohibited zone (refer to **Standard Detail DR09 – Building in Close Proximity**).
- (e) Where a pipeline is relocated around building works, a cut-off wall shall be constructed in the old trench to prevent ground water flow through the trench beneath the building works. A collection and diversion system may also be required at the discretion of Wellington Water if the ground water flow is significant.
- (f) Where building in close proximity to an existing public pipeline cannot be avoided, then the existing pipe should be replaced with a new pipe and “sleeved” at the developer’s expense (see **Section 4.12.1 Sleeving an existing pipe**).
 - (i) Sleeving is required primarily to preserve access for maintenance and future renewal of the pipe.
 - (ii) The sleeve is not intended to function as a future standalone pipe.
 - (iii) The sleeve or “host pipe” must comply with **Section 4.12.1 Sleeving an existing pipe**.
- (g) As sleeving is not always practicable for large pipes, building directly over a larger pipe (≥ 600 mm) without sleeving may be considered if:

- (i) The BLR requirements are still met (i.e., piles and building inner-edge points are below the BLR).
- (ii) It is demonstrated that there are no increased loads on the existing pipeline from the proposed building works, including no disturbance to the pipeline from piling or other construction activities.
- (iii) The building works are fully self-supporting and an excavation could be made to maintain or replace the pipe without undermining the foundations of any building works.
- (iv) The applicant provides Wellington Water with a PS2 producer statement from a Chartered (Structural) Engineer stating that the structure has been designed to meet the above conditions.

4.12.1 Sleeving an existing pipe

Sleeving consists of replacing an existing pipe with a new pipe that is housed within a new host pipe or “sleeve” that is laid at the same time.

The following applies to sleeving of pipes:

- (a) The replaced pipe to be sleeved shall be:
 - (i) Sized to accommodate the expected future capacity for the upstream catchment, regardless of the size of the existing pipe.
 - (ii) Able to be removed and replaced without excavation of the host pipe (notwithstanding launch/receiving pits).
 - (iii) Held concentrically centrally within the host pipe using polyethylene (PE) spacers, or similar purpose-designed spacers, with a minimum durability of the sleeved pipe.
 - (iv) Not connected to any laterals or junctions.
 - (v) Constructed from PE or other approved materials.
- (b) The sleeve must be laid in accordance with the following requirements (see **Figure 4-8** for a diagram):
 - (i) The sleeve shall be laid with sufficient working space, within the same lot, or within adjacent public land with prior written approval from the landowner, to allow for maintenance and removal of the pipe as follows:
 1. The launching end of the sleeve shall have a minimum length of clear working space adjacent to the building along the pipe alignment compliant with the requirements in **Table 4-1**.
 2. The receiving end of the sleeve shall have a minimum 2 m length of clear working space adjacent to the building along the pipe alignment.
 3. The width of the clear working space shall comply with the easements widths detailed in the relevant section(s) of the *Regional Standard for Water Services*.
 - (ii) The sleeve should extend a minimum of 1.0 m and not less than half the sleeve invert depth outside of the building foundation. Greater clearances may be required at the discretion of Wellington Water.

- (iii) The top of the sleeve must be a minimum of 600 mm depth below the underside of any slab / floor beams.
- (iv) If sleeving is a condition of resource consent, an easement will be required to protect access to the working space.
- (c) The host pipe shall be:
 - (i) Designed and constructed to accommodate the proposed loading.
 - (ii) Sealed against ingress of groundwater at both ends.
 - (iii) Large enough to accommodate the replaced pipe, including any collars or joints on the pipe (such as electrofusion (EF) couplers).
 - (iv) Constructed from approved materials compliant with this specification.

Table 4-11 – Minimum clear space requirements for launch end of sleeve

Depth to sleeve invert	Minimum length of clear space
1.0 – 2.0m	4.0m
2.0 – 3.0m	6.0m
3.0 – 4.0m	8.0m

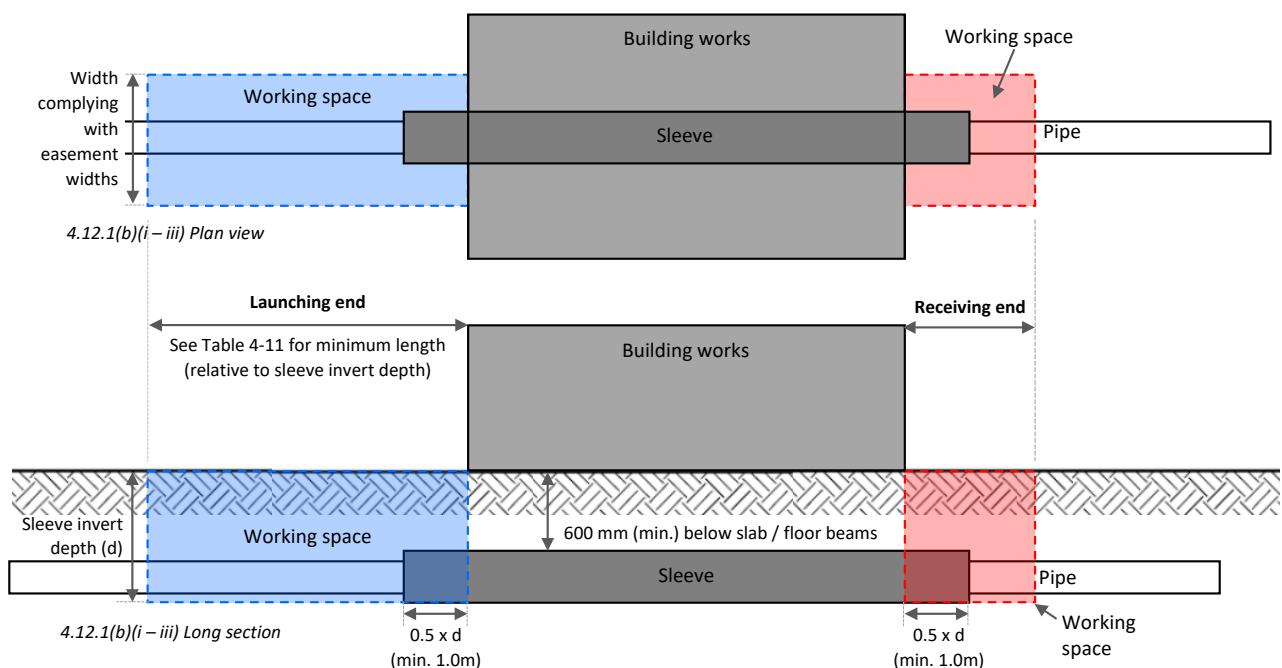


Figure 4-8 – Clearance and working space requirements for sleeved pipes

4.13 As-builts

As a minimum, as-builts shall comply with the Regional As-built Specification and Regional Draughting Manual which are separate to this document. As-builts shall also comply with any requirements individual councils may impose as part of any subdivision application.

4.14 Slip-lining

Slip-lining is where a new pipeline is inserted inside an existing pipeline. The following applies to the slip-lining of pipes:

- (a) Slip-lining AC pipes should be considered only if there is no other practicable alternative because the AC pipe surrounding the new pipeline constitutes a hazard that places those working on the new pipeline at risk (see **Section 4.4.1 Design for replacement of asbestos cement pipes**).
- (b) Although it is possible to install rubber ring jointed pipe such as PVC by slip-lining, unrestrained pipe shall not be used for slip-lining. Restraint joint PVC, restraint jointed ductile iron (DI) pipe, butt fusion welded PE pipe (that is externally de-beaded where needed) or butt-welded steel pipe may be used to slip-line deleted pipelines.
- (c) For gravity pipelines, slip-lining shall be assessed on a case-by-case basis and approval of slip-lining as the preferred methodology must be obtained from Wellington Water in the design phase. Assessments shall include:
 - (i) An options analysis (i.e., comparing risks and benefits of slip-lining to other methods such as open trench pipe replacement)
 - (ii) Comment on the effect on grade and
 - (iii) Calculations proving the network will continue to meet hydraulic design requirements.
- (a) The new pipeline must be smaller than the existing pipeline resulting in an annular gap between the new pipe and the host pipe. The annular gap may, or may not, be filled by flowable grout or a similar material.

4.14.1 Slip lining installation

The following applies to the installation of pipes by slip lining:

- (a) The host pipe shall be cut back a distance “d” either side of any connections to the inserted pipe, where “d” is 1.5 times the expected differential movement between the host pipe and the inserted pipe during a seismic event. This is required to prevent the connection to the inserted pipe being broken by impact with the host pipe.
- (b) A proposed methodology shall be submitted to Wellington Water or their representative and shall include the location of launching and receiving pits, slip-lining methodology, maximum allowable pulling force as recommended by the pipe manufacturer and equipment to be used.

- (c) Launching and receiving pits shall be excavated based on the proposed methodology. The location of the pits shall take into account traffic, hazards and the impact on the operation of the piped infrastructure.
- (d) A section of the existing host pipe shall be removed to enable slip-lining activities. Any pipe cuts, especially on the pipe which will remain in service, shall be neat and square and made such that splitting or stressing of the existing pipe is avoided.
- (e) The existing pipeline shall be cleared of any obstructions that will prevent the insertion of the liner. If inspection reveals an obstruction that is not at the location of the entry shaft and cannot be removed by cleaning and descaling, the pipe shall be exposed by excavation and the obstruction removed. Such excavation shall be approved in writing by Wellington Water prior to the commencement of the work.
- (f) The cleaned pipe shall be proofed to ensure no further obstructions exist. The proof shall be:
 - (i) Equivalent in diameter to the pipe to be pulled plus proposed skids and
 - (ii) Pulled in the same direction that the proposed slip-lining will be carried out.
- (g) PE100 pipe joints shall be butt fusion welded (see **Section 5.5.5.1 Butt fusion jointing**).
- (h) Polythene coated 4 mm² copper tracer wire as per **Section 6.3.8 Warning tape / tracer wire**, shall be inserted along with the slip-lined pipe.
- (i) The pipe shall be inserted into the existing main with a power winch and a steel cable connected to the end of the pipe by the use of an appropriate pulling head. The load on the pulling cable shall be monitored at all times to ensure the pipe's allowable pulling force is not exceeded. The inserted pipe shall:
 - (i) Be guided into the host pipe using rollers and
 - (ii) Not be bent beyond the allowable bending radius (see **Section 5.2.1 Drains laid on a curve**).
- (j) During insertion of PE100 pipe, precautions should be taken to protect the new pipe to prevent any ragged edges of the existing main from scoring the outside of the new pipe as it is being pulled into the existing main.
 - (i) Pipe scored greater than 10% of the pipes wall thickness shall not be permitted to be used or accepted for installation.
 - (ii) This may be achieved using skids firmly attached to the pipe.
 - (iii) Once the insertion is initiated, the pipe shall be continued to be pulled at a steady and uninterrupted rate to completion.
- (k) The inserted PE100 pipe shall be pulled a minimum of 1 m beyond the end of the host pipe and allowed to relax after pulling for a minimum time of 24 hours before the annular gap is sealed. This is to allow for the pipe to shrink after relaxing. The time may be reduced for shorter pipe lengths at the discretion of Wellington Water.

4.15 Pipe-bursting

Pipe bursting, or pipe cracking, is the term used to describe a renewal method where a tapered cone is forced through the bore of the pipe which is to be renewed. The forcing cone,

which is larger than the pipe being renewed, shatters and displaces the existing pipe. A new pipeline is then drawn-in behind the forcing cone.

The following applies to pipe-bursting:

- (a) Pipes that shall NOT be pipe-burst are AC pipe and gravity pipe that is concrete haunched.
- (b) Dips in gravity pipe need to be rectified or assessed to Wellington Water's approval prior to pipe bursting.
- (c) Pipe bursting is typically used to renew a pipe with a new pipe of equivalent diameter. It is possible to renew the pipe with a larger pipe.
- (d) The suitability of pipe bursting to renew any pipe is restricted by the depth of cover to the existing pipe and the potential for ground-heave and the proximity of other services.
 - (i) Typically, where the difference in OD of the existing pipe and the OD of the forcing cone is greater than 0.1 times the depth of cover, pipe bursting would not be suitable.
- (e) Pipe bursting shall not be used to renew AC pipelines because it leaves shattered asbestos fragments in the ground, which constitutes a hazard that places those working on the new pipeline at risk.
- (f) Pipe bursting is achieved by:
 - (i) A dynamic (typically pneumatic or hydraulic) impact tool, which forces the cone through the existing pipe. Dynamic bursting is not suitable for pulling-in new PVC pipelines.
 - (ii) A static pulling of the forcing cone through the existing pipe. Static bursting is suitable for pulling-in PE and threaded PVC pipes.
- (g) The existing pipeline shall be cleared of obstructions that will prevent the progress of the pipe bursting equipment.
- (h) If inspection reveals an obstruction that is not at the location of the entry shaft and cannot be removed by cleaning and descaling, the pipe shall be exposed by excavation and the obstruction repaired or removed. Such excavation shall be approved in writing by Wellington Water prior to the commencement of the work.
- (i) Where it is apparent from inspection that a repair has been made that has used ductile iron or steel couplings, the repair shall be excavated and the repair coupling removed.
- (j) PE pipe shall be butt fusion welded.

4.15.1 Pipe bursting of pressure pipelines

The following additional points apply to the pipe bursting of pressure pipelines:

- (a) Because PVC approved pressure pipes are rubber ring jointed, pipe bursting is not suitable for installing new PVC pressure mains.

- (b) If the new PE pipe is scored to a depth exceeding 10% of the pipe wall thickness, the pipe shall be cut off to where the depth of scoring is less than 10% and a new section of pipe drawn-in.
- (c) If the new PE pipe is scored to a depth exceeding 0.2 mm (or the minimum depth of peel), it shall not be welded using electrofusion couplers. A short length of new pipe may be butt fusion welded to the scored pipe, which can then be electrofusion welded together.

4.15.2 Pipe bursting of gravity pipelines

The following additional points apply to the pipe bursting of gravity pipelines:

- (a) Where the existing pipe to be renewed is a gravity sewer and the grade less than 1%, it shall not be renewed using PE pipe. In such cases it shall be renewed using threaded PVC pipe.
- (b) A pipe bursting machine shall be used that is suitable for the conditions anticipated with the existing pipeline.

4.15.3 Underground services near pipe bursting

Underground services shall be marked out prior to any pipe bursting, and the following approaches followed:

- (a) Where pipe bursting is employed, a minimum clearance of 750 mm to other services (between barrels) is required where the proposed pipe is the same nominal internal diameter as the existing pipe.
- (b) If a pipe with a larger internal diameter is to be pulled through the existing pipe, the minimum clearance to other services (between barrels) shall be 1000 mm.
- (c) If the pipe crosses another utility, the junction shall be excavated prior to bursting such that earth pressures on the adjacent utility are not increased when the pipe is pulled past the junction.

4.15.4 Pipe bursting installation

The following applies to the installation of pipes by pipe bursting:

- (a) The manufacturer of the pipe shall be consulted as to the safe pulling force to be used on the proposed pipe.
- (b) Monitoring of the pulling force shall be maintained during installation.
- (c) The safe pulling force shall not be exceeded at any time.
- (d) A copy of the manufacturer's recommendations and the installation methodology shall be presented to Wellington Water or their representative prior to installation.
- (e) Where the pulling force is exceeded, the installer may be required to replace the pipe at their expense.
- (f) Prior to installation, the existing pipe shall be inspected and all bends, tees, fittings and steel and ductile iron couplings shall be removed.
- (g) Tracer wire, as per **Section 6.3.8 Warning tape / tracer wire**, shall be used with all pipe bursting activity.

4.15.5 Pipeline recovery

Pipes installed by pipe bursting shall be:

- (a) Pulled a minimum of 1 m beyond the end of the host pipe.
- (b) Given suitable time to recover from thermal expansion and stretching before connecting to a rigid connection.
- (c) Given a minimum period of 24 hours before connecting the pipeline to any valves, manholes, bends or other rigid connection.

4.16 Impact moling

The following applies to installation by impact moling:

- (a) All the underground services shall be marked with depths prior to any impact moling operation. It is recommended that adequate target points are excavated to monitor this operation.
- (b) Due to the inaccurate nature of impact moling, a clearance of 1000 mm is required between the proposed alignment and other parallel services.
- (c) Tracer wire as per **Section 6.3.8 Warning tape / tracer wire** shall be used with all impact moling activity.
- (d) Where an impact mole bore is forced off-line or prevented from advancing along the proposed alignment, the bore shall be stopped. The impact mole shall be excavated and exposed, the alignment corrected and the unit re-launched.
- (e) To avoid the pipeline being contaminated with lubricating oil, either a front vented impact mole shall be used, or alternatively, a liner film within the pipe shall be installed. On completion of the bore the liner shall be removed, leaving a clean inner surface.
- (f) Adequate time shall be allowed for the installed pipe to relax prior to any connections or fittings being made.

4.17 Directional drilling

The following applies to directional drilling:

- (a) The objective is the installation of polyethylene pipelines on a proposed alignment by:
 - (i) Creating a clean hole through which the new pipe is drawn-in.
 - (ii) Creating a fluidised column of soil and mud through which the new pipe can be drawn-in and displace the fluidised ground.
- (b) When complete, the polyethylene pipe should extend between the launch pit and drill pit, or new manholes in continuous, watertight lengths.

4.17.1 Underground services near directional drilling

The following applies to underground services near directional drilling:

- (a) All underground services shall be located prior to the drilling operation.

- (b) The drilling operator shall be liable for damages to any underground services despite any approval given by the Wellington Water or their representative.
- (c) The proposed alignment of the pipe shall have a clearance of 1000 mm from other parallel services, buildings or ground surface.
- (d) A tolerance of ± 100 mm will be permitted between the proposed and as-built alignment.

4.17.2 Directional drilling pipe installation

The following applies to directional drilling pipe installation:

- (a) Directional drilling is suitable for installing:
 - (i) New sewer pipes at grade
 - (ii) Pressure pipelines and
 - (iii) Stormwater pipelines typically less than 450 mm, although larger sizes are possible with appropriate rig and space for establishment.
- (b) Voids greater than 50 mm around the proposed alignment shall be backfilled and sealed with bentonite grout (or similar approved material).
- (c) No drilling fluid or waste material shall be discharged into the sewer or stormwater system. All waste material shall be disposed to an approved site. Spillage of any drilling fluid shall be cleaned immediately.
- (d) It should be ensured that the pipes are not subjected to pulling loads in excess of the pipe manufacturer's recommended tensile loads. Pipes shall not be subjected to excessive bending stresses during pullback operations.
- (e) All precautions shall be made to ensure that the end of the pipe to be passed through the bore is sealed to prevent the ingress of earth or other foreign matter.
- (f) Tracer wire as per **Section 6.3.8 Warning tape / tracer wire**, shall be drawn through the bore with the pipe.
- (g) The pipe shall be pulled a minimum of 1 m beyond the end of the host pipe and provided suitable time to recover from and stretching before connecting to a rigid connection.
- (h) A minimum period of 24 hours shall pass before connecting the pipeline to any valves, manholes, bends or other rigid connection.
- (i) Sewer pipelines at grades of 1% or flatter shall not be installed using directional drilling.
- (j) Frac-outs are the loss of drilling mud to the environment either through ground surface, into streams or other structures:
 - (i) To ensure frac-outs do not occur, the length of the drill-shot, ground conditions and mud pressures shall be considered.
 - (ii) Before drilling commences, the contractor shall provide for approval a procedure for the containment and clean-up where frac-outs could occur.
- (k) A directional drilling machine shall be used that is suitable for the conditions anticipated. The size and capacity of the drilling equipment must be compatible with

the torque and pull back required to perform the drilling, reaming and pipe pullback installation. It shall also be capable of installing a pipeline to the required tolerances.

- (l) Directional drilling shall be carried out with either a “pit-launched” or “surface launched” machine. Appropriate drilling fluid or “mud” shall be used to facilitate the boring.
 - (i) Adequate sample pits shall be excavated to evaluate what type of bore head and “mud” to use for the operation.
 - (ii) A sonde or beacon shall be built into the head or fixed close to the head to monitor the progress of the drilling head.
 - (iii) A hard-wire guidance system and adequate target points is recommended to accurately monitor the progress of the drilling head while drilling.
- (m) A 1:100 scale site plan shall be forwarded to Wellington Water and written approval obtained prior to drilling. The plan shall show all the underground services, buildings and proposed alignment of the pipe.
- (n) PE100 pipe joints shall be butt fusion welded (see **Section 4.19.1 Butt fusion welding**).
 - (i) Where the depth of scoring on the pipe, for an area extending 50 mm all-round the contact area of the saddle, exceeds the depth of peel for electrofusion saddles the depth of peel may be increased so that.
 - 1. The OD of the peeled pipe is not smaller than the minimum OD recommended by the manufacturer of the saddle.
 - 2. The OD of the peeled pipe is not smaller than the minimum requirements of PIPA POP001.
 - 3. Where this cannot be achieved the pipe shall be rejected.
 - (ii) Where the depth of scoring on PE100 pipe exceeds the depth of peel for electrofusion sockets:
 - 1. The pipe ends shall be cut off.
 - 2. Short sections of undamaged pipe shall be butt-welded to the end of each drill shot.
 - 3. The drill shots shall be joined using an electrofusion socket fitting (coupler) installed on the new, undamaged pipe ends.
 - (iii) Where the ends of the drill-shot(s) need to be replaced with undamaged new pipe, the new pipe shall be butt-welded to the drill-shot(s), except where **Section 4.19.5(g) Welding PE pressure pipe** applies, in which case the following applies:
 - 1. The drill-shots can be cut-back to a section of pipe where the depth of scoring is less than the peel depth for electrofusion sockets.
 - 2. The undamaged new pipe is installed as a single length of pipe (a closing piece) between the end of each drill-shot.
 - 3. No more than two electrofusion couplers are used to connect the closing piece to the two drill-shots.

- (o) The alignment of the grade of the pilot hole shall be checked after drilling and compared against allowable tolerances. Where deviations are outside the allowable tolerances, a new pilot hole shall be drilled.

4.18 Lining as pipe rehabilitation

Pipe rehabilitation is an alternative design solution that needs project-specific approval from Wellington Water in accordance with the Dispensation Procedure (see **RSWS Section 3.3.2 Pipe rehabilitation**). For pipe rehabilitation using cured in place pipe (CIPP) lining, spiral wound lining, and fold and form lining, please contact Wellington Water for the latest guidelines.

4.18.1 CIPP lining of pressure water pipes

In addition to the manufacturers requirements, the following applies to CIPP lining of pressure water pipes:

- (a) All work associated with lining of AC pipe must comply with the Approved Code of Practice for the Management and Removal of Asbestos⁶ and the Health and Safety at Work (Asbestos) Regulations 2016 (see **Section 4.4.2 Working with AC pipes**).
- (b) Curing processes using heat or steam must consider and plan for potential odour and release of volatile organic compounds, including requirements for discharges to air under the regional plan.
- (c) The material properties of the CIPP liner must meet the requirements outlined in WSA 150-2021 and AS/NZS 4020.
- (d) The product test requirements in WSA 150-2021 shall be used for both cured and uncured conditions.
- (e) The quality assurance requirements in WSA 202 shall be used for installation and acceptance testing.
- (f) Mechanical clamps that primary seal to the outside of the host pipe shall not be used where the host pipe is in poor condition or is at risk of further deterioration.
- (g) Rider mains are preferred over reinstating service connections to the lined pipe.
- (h) Detailed requirements for suitable fittings and valves are influenced by the specific lining product and therefore must be based on advice from the manufacturer, as well as meeting other requirements in this specification for fittings and valves.
- (i) The physical dimensions of the host pipe shall be confirmed by direct measurements to confirm the size of the required liner.
- (j) Consideration shall be given to the need to remove valves, hydrants and other fittings before installing the liner and reconfiguration or replacement following lining.
- (k) Pressure testing at the maximum design pressure should be done prior to and after reconnection of service connections.

4.19 Polyethylene welding

It is critical for PE pressure pipelines that butt fusion welds exhibit ductile yield, and electrofusion welds exhibit ductile decohesion.

⁶ Approved code of practice: Management and removal of asbestos. WorkSafe New Zealand. 2016

Welding shall generally follow the requirements of PIPA POP001⁷ and PIPA POP003⁸, except where amended by this specification.

4.19.1 Butt fusion welding

The following applies to butt fusion welding (see also **Section 6.4.3 Polyethylene butt fusion and electrofusion welding**):

- (a) Generally, butt fusion welding shall only be carried out on pipes that are of the same outside diameter, standard dimension ratio (SDR) and material (i.e., both pipes are PE100 or PE80b).
- (b) Petrol powered chainsaws shall **NOT** be used to cut PE pipe.
- (c) Fully automatic butt fusion welding machines shall **NOT** be used. A fully automatic machine completes a weld without prompting the operator to carry out checks.
- (d) Pipes of the same OD, but a different wall thickness, shall be joined using an electrofusion coupler, or the wall of the pipe with the smaller SDR (that is the thicker wall) shall be machined to match the wall thickness of the pipe it is to be welded to.
- (e) Only hydraulic butt fusion welding machines shall be used.
- (f) Semi-automatic welding machines are approved for use. A semi-automatic machine cannot complete the weld without the operator checking, measuring and inputting a prompt for the machine to continue at critical stages (weld alignment, for example).
- (g) All equipment used for butt fusion welding shall be maintained as per manufacturer's specifications and in good working order.
- (h) Pressure gauges shall be calibrated within the last six months and in readable increments of at least 10 kPa.
- (i) The welding site shall be fully enclosed to protect it from environmental conditions such as wind, windblown dust, rain, dirt and bright sun.
- (j) Gravity PE100 pipes less than or equal to 160 OD and that are laid at a grade less than 2% shall be internally de-beaded.

4.19.2 Electrofusion welding

The following applies to electrofusion welding (see also **Section 6.4.3 Polyethylene butt fusion and electrofusion welding**):

- (a) Petrol powered chainsaws shall **NOT** be used to cut PE pipe.
- (b) The contractor shall not commence electrofusion welding unless they have on-site all necessary plant to carry out electrofusion welding. This shall include effective alignment clamps, re-rounding clamps and PI tape suitable for the size of the pipe being welded.

⁷ Industry guidelines. *Electrofusion jointing of PE pipes and fittings for pressure applications. Issue 8.0. POP001. Plastics Industry Pipe Association of Australia Limited (PIPA). 2019.*

⁸ Industry guidelines *Butt fusion jointing of PE pipes and fittings – recommended parameters. POP003. Plastics Industry Pipe Association of Australia Limited (PIPA). 2018.*

- (c) Electrofusion jointing shall be carried out using an automatic electrofusion control box designed for the fittings proposed to be used. The control box shall have a barcode reader and electronic data logging, which shall be downloaded daily and delivered to Wellington Water.
- (d) Before preparing the pipe end, visible reversion shall be cut off so that the pipe end has a constant OD.
- (e) Hand scrapers shall **NOT** be used, except where required to dress pipe ends.
- (f) Witness marks should be scored on the pipe with a hand scraper in preference to using a non-depositing pen.
- (g) The welding site shall be fully enclosed to protect it from environmental conditions such as wind, windblown dust, rain, dirt and bright sun.

4.19.3 Site QA forms

A welding log sheet shall be maintained by the operator as part of the quality documentation. The log sheet shall record the information shown in **Table 4-12**, as a minimum:

Table 4-12 – Minimum information required on welding log sheets

Weld type	Category	Information required and details	
All welds	General weld information	Weld number	
		Date and time weld was made	
		Weld location (<i>accurate to +/- 1 m when installed</i>)	
	Welder information	Welders name	
		Certification details including currency	
	Pipe details	PE material classification	
		DN	
		SDR	
		PN	
		Pipe manufacturer	Name
			Code for date and place of manufacture
Butt fusion welds	General	Welding parameter used, including revision no / date	
		Operators observations	
	Machine details	Make	
		Model	
	Pipe details	Measured OR calculated mean pipe wall thickness	
	Heater plate	Condition	
		Cleaned?	Y / N / NA
		Average temperature at 4 points – recorded for 2 sides	

Weld type	Category	Information required and details		
	Alignment	Misalignment	Is misalignment visible?	Y / N / NA
			Record maximum misalignment	
		End-gap	Is end-gap visible?	Y / N / NA
			Record maximum end-gap (if present)	
	Cool time	Was cool time out of the clamps observed?		Y / N / NA
	External weld bead inspection	Width	Minimum and maximum	
		Height	Minimum and maximum	
		Bead fully rolled-over and round?		Y / N / NA
		Bead symmetrical on both sides?		Y / N / NA
		Bead uniform around weld circumference?		Y / N / NA
		Pitting visible?		Y / N / NA
		Surface of bead appears glassy or satin?		Y / N / NA
		Bead discoloured?		Y / N / NA
	Miscellaneous	Operator’s observations		
Electrofusion welds	Fitting details	Type	Electrofusion socket / electrofusion saddle / electrofusion transition	
		Size	Record DN if applicable	
		Manufacturer		
		Model or designation		
	Pipe details	Out of round	Record measured ovality before re-rounding / record corrected ovality if re-rounded	
		Reversion	Is it visible?	Y / N / NA
			What does it measure?	
			Was it cut-off?	Y / N / NA
		Pipe OD	Before peeling	
			After first peel	
			After second peel	
			After third or final peel	
		Pipe ends	Pipe ends cut square?	Y / N / NA
			Record each pipe end max. out-of-square	
		Type	Cloth and liquid / wipes	

Weld type	Category	Information required and details	
	Cleaning solvent	Manufacturer's name and branding	
		Solvent type	IPA or ethyl alcohol
		Concentration on label	
	Electrofusion control box	Make	
		Model	
		Currency of certificate of calibration	
	Miscellaneous	Was alignment clamp used?	Y / N / NA
		Was re-rounding clamp used?	Y / N / NA
		Did witness marks align with fitting?	Y / N / NA

The welding log sheet shall be submitted to Wellington Water as part of the project completion alongside the as-built documentation.

4.19.4 Pipeline testing and weld testing

Hydrostatic testing, or air testing, of the pipe to show that it is water tight shall not be accepted as evidence that the welds are full strength and ductile. Weld testing shall be as outlined in the following sections.

4.19.5 Welding PE pressure pipe

The following applies to the welding of PE pressure pipe:

- (a) PE pressure pipe shall comply with AS/NZS 4130.
- (b) The high pressure-single pressure welding parameter specified in ISO 21307:2011 shall not be acceptable.
- (c) Acceptable welding parameters include:
 - (i) The single pressure-low pressure parameter specified in ISO 21307:2011⁹
 - (ii) DVS 2207.1¹⁰ and
 - (iii) Other welding parameters accepted in writing by Wellington Water.
- (d) PE pressure pipes shall be welded by qualified PE welding operators, whose certification is current and has a good track record and experience welding pipe of an equivalent size and class as the pipeline to be constructed in the contract.
 - (i) Acceptable welding qualifications shall include certification under the existing New Zealand ITO framework, or certification under the proposed PIPA NZ qualification framework.

⁹ Although this standard was revised in 2017, the R.Spec refers to the 2011 standard. In particular the 2011 standard requires a longer cool time for welds. To comply, the welding machine parameter for cooling time needs to be set manually.

¹⁰ DVS 2207.1 Welding of thermoplastics - Heated element welding of pipes, piping parts and panels made out of polyethylene.

- (ii) Where a welder is not certified, or their certification is lapsed and they can show good experience welding pipe of an equivalent size and class to Wellington Water, they may be acceptable at the written discretion of Wellington Water.
- (iii) Where the welding operator is newly qualified and/or with limited experience, they shall weld under the supervision of a suitably qualified welding operator acceptable to Wellington Water.
- (e) PE pressure pipe shall be welded **AND** destructively tested according to this specification.
- (f) PE pressure pipe DN 125 and greater shall be butt fusion welded.
- (g) Electrofusion socket couplers shall not be used to join PE pressure DN 125 and greater, except where welds must be completed in the trench (for example, to join pipe currently being laid to pipe that was previously laid during the contract).
- (h) Welding of tapping saddles and tapping tees shall be by electrofusion saddle welding.

4.19.6 Welding PE gravity pipe

The following applies to the welding of PE gravity pipe:

- (a) PE gravity pipe shall comply with AS/NZS 4130 or AS/NZS 5065.
- (b) PE gravity pipes shall generally be welded by qualified welding operators, or welding operators with a good track record and experience welding pipe of an equivalent size and class to the pipeline to be constructed in the contract.
- (c) PE gravity pipe shall be welded according to this specification.
- (d) It shall not be necessary to destructively test welds according to this specification.
- (e) The requirement for butt fusion welds shall generally be determined by the installation method.
- (f) Electrofusion socket couplers shall be acceptable for the joining of PE gravity pipe.
- (g) The contractor shall take care that the pipe ends are prepared correctly and bevelled so that the joint will not rag in operation.

4.19.7 Work method statement

Before site welding or pre-qualification welding commences, the contractor shall submit a work method statement (WMS) for acceptance in writing by Wellington Water.

The WMS shall contain the following information, dependent on weld type:

Table 4-13 – Information required for WMS

Weld type	Category	Information required and details
All welds	Compliance information for proposed:	Pipe to be used to construct the contract
		Welding parameters to weld the pipe
		Welding plant to be used to construct the contract
		Welding operators to carry out the construction welding

Weld type	Category	Information required and details	
	Method	Detailed method information on how the contractor proposes to weld the pipe	
	Contract information	Contract title	
		Contract number	
	Introduction	e.g., "This Work Method Statement outlines the steps and calculations to [butt fusion / electrofusion] weld PE pipes for the above contract."	
	Referenced documents	Including relevant standards for pipe, relevant standards welding parameters, WSA documents, PIPA guidelines, welding machine operating manuals etc.	
	Pipe specific details including:	Resin	Base resin manufacturer
			Resin name
			Batch information
			Copies of conformance paperwork from resin manufacturer
		Pipe	Pipe manufacturer
			Pipe batch information
	Welding machine details	Manufacturer	
		Model	
		Age and condition	
		Maintenance history	
		Copy of current certificate of calibration	
		Data logging and data logging output	
		Ancillary equipment	Pipe cutting equipment
			Generator to be used
			Pipe rollers
			Welding shelter
	Welding operator details including:	Copies of certification	
		Relevant experience (including track record from weld testing)	
	Proposed Welding Procedure Specification (WPS)	How pipe is cut	
		Handling of pipe	
		Pipe cleaning	Cleaning solvent proposed to be used
			Physically how the cleaning is carried out

Weld type	Category	Information required and details	
Butt fusion welding	including brief details on:	Alignment checking and how tolerances are measured	
		QA inspections and recording	
		Data log capture and delivery to Wellington Water	
	Additional welding machine details	Ram area	
		Ancillary equipment	Facing plate (does it have new cutters installed)
			Heater plate (is it skinned or bonded Teflon – condition of faces)
		Cleaning solvent	Brand
			Solvent used
			% Concentration of solvent and water
	Additional WPS details specific to weld type	Loading of pipe	
		Roller set-up and handling of weld during pull-off	
		Heater plate checking and recording	
		Control of the heat soak, weld, and cool times	
	Welding parameters	Welding parameters proposed for the welding – including worked calculations for each pipe size and pipe class to be welded.	
Electrofusion welds	Details of the electrofusion fittings proposed to be used including:	Manufacturer	
		Type and model number	
		Size and pressure rating	
		Batch number(s)	
	Additional welding machine details	Ancillary equipment	Details of proposed alignment clamps for use, and if used
			Details of re-rounding clamps proposed for use
			Details of peeling tool proposed to be used, including condition of cutters and depth of cut
			Pipe cutting equipment
	Additional WPS details specific to weld type	How pipe is cut square	
		Pipe measurements	Mean OD
			Ovality
			Reversion

Weld type	Category	Information required and details	
		Pipe peeling	Details on extent of peel
			How depth of cut is measured,
			Required depth of peel
		Witness marking	
		Use of re-rounding clamps	
		Control of the weld and cool times	
		Re-fusing fittings	

4.19.8 PE fusion welding framework

It is critical for PE pressure pipelines that PE fusion welds exhibit ductile yield, and electrofusion welds exhibit ductile decohesion.

To achieve this, welding operations carried out in these works shall follow the destructive testing process in **Figure 4-9**.

4.19.8.1 Pre-qualification welding

The pre-qualification welding phase shall be carried out as follows:

- (a) Before commencement of the PE welding portion of the contract works, the contractor shall:
 - (i) Weld three pre-qualifying butt fusion welds for each size and class of pipe for which butt fusion welding will be used in the contract works.
 - (ii) Weld three pre-qualifying electrofusion socket welds for each size and type of fitting with electrofusion sockets (e.g. coupler, tees, bends, transition couplers, etc) to be used in the contract works – except for electrofusion socket fittings smaller than 63 mm where pre-qualification welding shall not be required.
 - (iii) Weld three pre-qualifying electrofusion saddle welds for each size of pipe for which PE saddles will be used in the contract works (i.e. no EF (electrofusion) saddles used, no EF saddle test welds required).
- (b) The pre-qualifying welds shall be made:
 - (i) Under site conditions
 - (ii) In the presence of Wellington Water
 - (iii) Using the plant and labour specified in the WMS and
 - (iv) In accordance with the approved WMS.
- (c) Where the contractor proposes to pre-qualify more than one welding operator, then each welding operator shall prepare three weld specimens for each weld specified above.

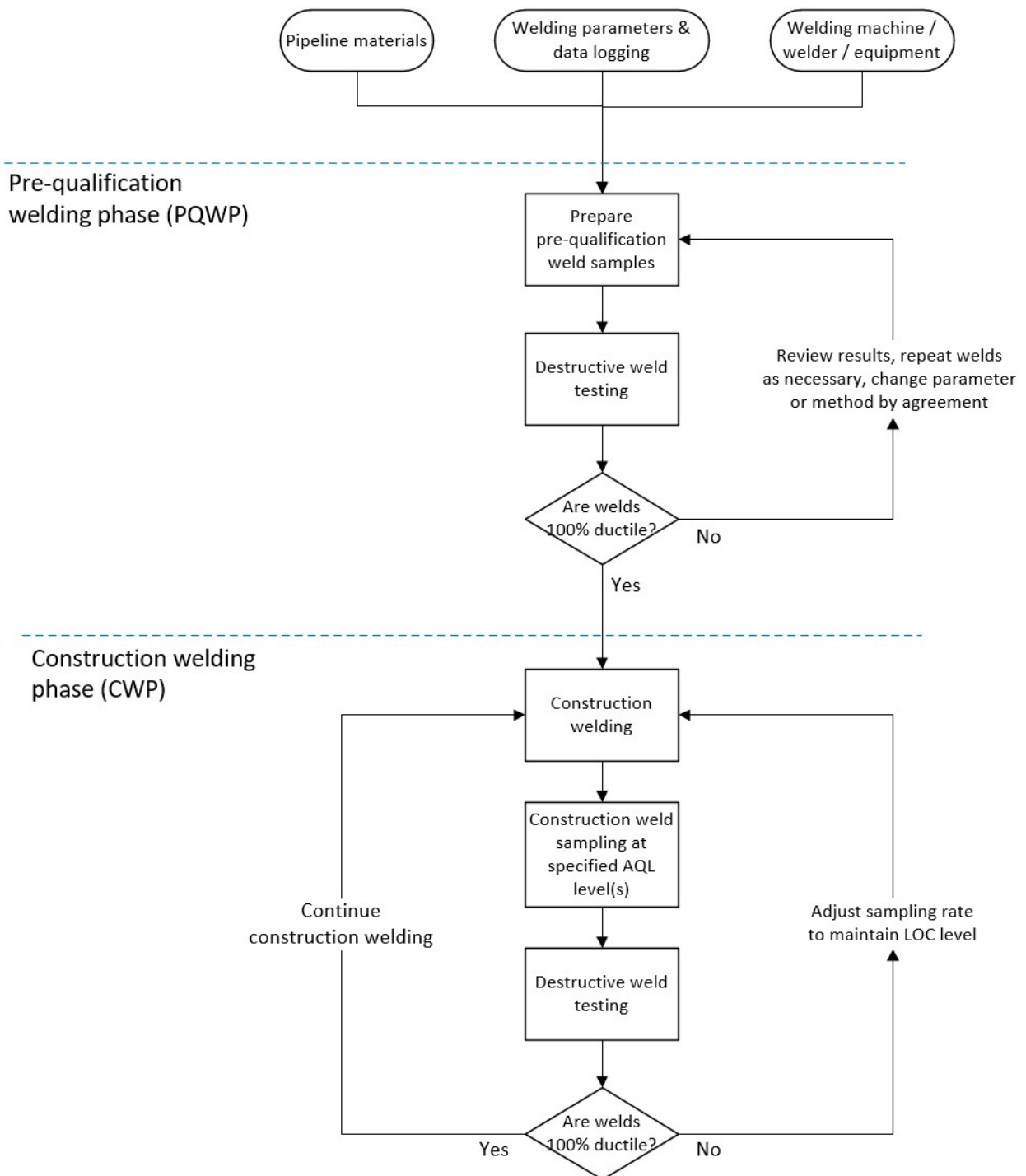


Figure 4-9 – PE fusion welding framework

4.19.8.2 Butt weld testing

The welds for testing shall be:

- (a) Cut out as specified and marked with:
 - (i) The Council and contract name.
 - (ii) Test weld number (each weld shall be sequentially numbered so it can be individually identified).
 - (iii) The welder's name and certification number.
 - (iv) Butt fusion welds shall be marked to show their orientation in the welding machine.
- (b) Sent to an IANZ registered laboratory for destructive testing.
- (c) And an additional test piece shall be cut from the unaffected pipe wall and tested.

4.19.8.3 PE Weld test report

- (a) All test reports shall be copied directly to Wellington Water, who will confirm if the weld is a pass or fail. In addition to the reporting required by the standards outlined in **Table 4-14**, the following information must be provided:
 - (i) Identification of the pipe including:
 - 1. Mean OD.
 - 2. Average wall thickness.
 - 3. Manufacture (if known).
 - 4. Details of any banding visible.
 - (ii) The weld identification (should be written on the pipe by the welder), including test weld number in the case of a test weld.
 - (iii) High resolution colour photographs of:
 - 1. The welder's marking of the weld sample.
 - 2. Profile view of all test piece after machining and before testing.
 - 3. Front view of all test pieces after testing.
 - (iv) A plot of load versus displacement of the cross-head with all test pieces and pipe wall sample on the same axis.
 - (v) The rupture strength of each test piece expressed as a percentage of the rupture strength of unaffected pipe wall.
- (b) In addition to examination of the rupture surface as required by the standards outlined in **Table 4-14**, any rupture surface suspected of not being 100% ductile shall be re-examined as follows:
 - (i) The rupture surface shall be re-inspected under 60 power magnification.
 - (ii) Magnification shall be optical magnification, not digital magnification.
 - (iii) Where possible a scale shall be included in the view.
 - (iv) The view shall show the surface as close as possible to true colour and appearance.

- (v) Where relatively deep profile is present, focus shall be adjusted to clearly show the most important structures on the surface.
- (vi) Magnified views shall be included in the test report.

4.19.8.4 Weld acceptance

- (a) To be acceptable all pre-qualifying welds shall be shown by destructive testing to meet or exceed the performance requirements specified in **Table 4-14**.
- (b) A failed result shall occur when any of the three welds, for any one type of weld, do not meet the performance requirements specified.
- (c) Following a pass result, the contractor is required to complete the contract welding in an identical manner using the same welding operator, equipment, and WMS that was used to prepare the pre-qualifying weld.
- (d) Normal construction welding (see **Section 4.19.8.5 Construction welding**) shall not commence until the welding contractor has successfully completed a satisfactory pre-qualifying weld.
- (e) The contractor shall note that the results of weld testing will not be available for a period of approximately one week. The contractor shall allow for this hold point in the programming of their work.
- (f) Where a failed result occurs, the contractor shall re-evaluate their WMS and propose changes to achieve a pass result. When the revised WMS is acceptable to Wellington Water, the contractor shall prepare three new weld specimens (of the weld/s that failed) for testing.
- (g) The cost to repeat the pre-qualifying test welds shall be deemed to be included in the contractor's lump sum rate. The laboratory costs for repeat testing shall be paid by the contractor.
- (h) The contractor shall note that, where a pass result is achieved for the pre-qualifying butt fusion welds, but not for one or more of the pre-qualifying electrofusion welds, it would be possible to mobilise on-site and undertake the construction butt fusion welding. However, the electrofusion fitting associated with the failed result cannot be installed on-site until the pre-qualifying electrofusion weld/s pass testing.

Table 4-14 – Weld performance and test requirements

Weld	Testing requirement	Performance requirement
Butt fusion weld – DN125 and greater	ISO 13953	Tensile Strength of any test piece shall be greater than 90% of the tensile strength of unaffected pipe wall. All test pieces shall be fully ductile. The weld shows no visual defect. ⁴ All test pieces after sectioning show no visual defect. ⁴
Electrofusion socket weld – DN63	ISO 13955	% brittle decohesion shall be equal to or less than L/3. ¹ The weld shows no visual defect. ⁴

Weld	Testing requirement	Performance requirement
		All test pieces after sectioning show no visual defect. ⁴
Electrofusion socket weld ≥DN125	ISO 13954	% brittle decohesion shall be equal to or less than L/3. ¹ The weld shows no visual defect. ⁴ All test pieces after sectioning show no visual defect. ⁴
Electrofusion saddle weld – DN63	ISO 13955 OR ISO 13956	% brittle decohesion shall be equal to or less than L/3. ¹ The weld shows no visual defect. ⁴ All test pieces after sectioning show no visual defect. ⁴
Electrofusion saddle weld - ≥DN125	ISO 13956	Maximum brittle decohesion $L_d = /< 50\%^2$ $A_d = /< 25\%^3$ The weld shows no visual defect. ⁴

- Where L is the distance between the first and last element winding.
- $L_d = (L/y) \times 100 (\%)$
Where L is the greatest length of brittle decohesion and y is the distance between the first and last element winding in any radial direction from the centre of the fitting.
- $A_d = (A/A_{nom}) \times 100 (\%)$
Where A is the aggregate of all the areas where brittle decohesion has occurred and A_{nom} is the theoretical area of the total fusion zone, as declared by the manufacturer or measured on the fitting.
- Visual defects shall include, but not limited to:
 - Butt Fusion Welds:
 - Misalignment greater than 10%
 - Beads that are not symmetrical, fully rolled-over and the correct size
 - Pitting in the weld bead
 - Discolouration or glassy appearance to a weld bead
 - Electrofusion Welds:
 - Hand scraped pipe
 - Unevenly scraped pipe
 - Insufficient peeled area
 - Visible misalignment across an electrofusion socket fitting
 - Melt-rise indicators uneven or not risen in an electrofusion fitting
 - Loss of melt from the cold zone of an electrofusion weld
 - Witness marks not visible

4.19.8.5 Construction welding

The construction welding phase shall be carried out as follows:

- Construction welding shall not commence until the contractor can achieve three consecutive passes for each type of pre-construction weld.
- Welds will be sampled and destructively tested to maintain the level of confidence as established in the preconstruction welding phase.

- (c) Welds shall comply with the performance requirements set out in this document.
- (d) The Sampling Plan shall be designed in accordance with AS 1199.1 “Sampling Procedures for inspection by Attributes”.
- (e) The Lot size shall not exceed 150 welds of the same type and size. Where the number of welds of the same type and size exceed 150 in number, the works shall be broken down into two or more smaller Lots of approximately the same size.
- (f) The general inspection level shall be I.
- (g) The Acceptance Quality Limit (AQL) shall be 2.5.
- (h) To be acceptable, NO welds from the Lot shall fail (that is, not satisfy the performance requirements specified in this document). Where all welds pass, the Lot shall be acceptable and it shall not be subject to re-sampling.
- (i) The contractor shall note the soonest time test results will be available is five working days after receipt of the welds by the testing Laboratory.
- (j) Where the contractor chooses to continue welding they do so at their risk.

4.19.8.6 In case of failure

In case of failure:

- (a) Where a weld fails testing, the Lot may not necessarily be rejected.
 - (i) In the first instance a new Lot shall be created.
 - (ii) The new Lot shall be from the last passed weld (or last accepted Lot), to the failed weld.
 - (iii) The new Lot shall be sampled as follows:
 - General Inspection Level = I
 - AQL = 2.5
 - Acceptance Requirement = No weld fails
- (b) Where all welds pass, the failed weld will be considered an aberration and the new lot shall be accepted.
- (c) Where one or more welds fail, the new Lot will be rejected. In this the contractor shall replace that section of pipeline, or the welds in that section (as agreed with Wellington Water), at their cost.
- (d) The contractor is required to investigate the reason for the weld failure. As appropriate they will make changes to their WMS, as agreed with Wellington Water, and re-commence welding.

5 DRAINAGE SPECIFICATIONS

The following specifications pertain to technical aspects of general drainage construction. These may be superseded by specific specifications issued by Wellington Water for Wellington Water construction contracts. All other construction must comply with the following specifications unless dispensation in accordance with the Dispensation Procedure is given in writing by Wellington Water.

5.1 Safety

The following requirements are for personnel who have been employed to work on Wellington Water projects and the councils' assets. They are minimum requirements, but do not constitute full compliance with all legislative requirements. Reference should be made to Wellington Water's health and safety policy and any relevant procedures and policies by those responsible for carrying out the works.

5.1.1 Drainage hazards

All workers shall be instructed about the hazards of working in sanitary and stormwater sewers. These hazards include:

- (a) Bacterial and viral danger to food and drink in the absence of high standards of hygiene.
- (b) Infection danger to open cuts.
- (c) Rat bites, flea infestation.
- (d) Toxic wastes which may burn or poison.
- (e) Poisonous or explosive gases.

Workers coming into contact with sewage shall be inoculated against Hepatitis (infectious and B as available) and Tetanus. Refer to **Section 4.1.1 Immunisations** for relevant information on immunisations and vaccinations.

5.1.2 Drainage network underground entry

Entry to any parts of a live sanitary or stormwater sewer system is considered to be a confined space activity. Only personnel with third-party confined space entry certification shall enter a confined space.

All personnel shall comply with Wellington Water's Confined Space Entry process/policy which is available on the Wellington Water webpage.

5.2 Setting out

The following applies to setting out drainage pipes and systems:

- (a) All drainage works shall be set out under the direction of a registered drainlayer, person qualified to the National Certificate in Infrastructure Works (Infrastructure Pipelaying Technician) (Level 3) or New Zealand Certificate in Pipe Installations (Level 4), and to the position and levels detailed on the approved drawings.

- (b) Where the alignment is related to the street boundary, drains shall be laid with reference to permanent land transfer boundary pegs or temporary boundary marks placed by a licensed cadastral or registered professional surveyor responsible for the final land transfer pegging. Pipes *shall not* be laid by reference to the kerb line only.
- (c) The deviation in level at any point from that specified or shown on the long section shall not be greater than 5 mm for grades flatter than 1%, or 10 mm for grades steeper than 1%.
- (d) Where it is intended for the drain to be straight, the deviation from a perfectly straight line at any point shall not exceed the lesser of $\frac{1}{4}$ the internal diameter or 150 mm.
- (e) The maximum joint displacement of flush jointed concrete pipes shall be 5 mm.
- (f) Notwithstanding anything written in this specification, no change in direction at any point within the drain shall exceed the manufacturer's recommended maximum change.

5.2.1 Drains laid on a curve

The following applies to drains laid on a curve (PE only):

- (a) PE drains laid with a curve between manholes shall be formed by bending the pipe. The tightest radius of curvature for bending shall be 50 x the OD of the pipe, but no tighter than the manufacturer's recommendation.
- (b) A twin 1.0 mm TPS (thermoplastic-sheathed cable) electrical locator cable shall be laid along the top of the curved drain:
 - (i) The ends of the cable shall be extended into the manholes and up to the lid so that locating instruments can be connected onto the cable.
 - (ii) Joints in the cable between manholes will not normally be permitted as the normally permitted maximum spacing of manholes is less than the supplied length of the cable.
 - (iii) If it is necessary to make joints in the cable, they are to be made with electrical connectors and shall be completely encased in a silicon rubber sealant to seal the joint against corrosion.

5.2.2 Drain invert at a manhole

For the purposes of measurement and setting out, the invert level of a drain at a manhole is:

- (a) The level of a pipeline projected to the centre of the manhole. For example, the level the pipe invert would be if it was laid to the centre of the manhole. This excludes any change in grade or drop in the manhole.
- (b) Not the level of the drain at the wall of the manhole.
- (c) Not necessarily the actual finished level at the centre of the manhole.

5.2.3 Clearances from other utilities

The following applies to clearances from other utilities when setting out drainage pipes:

- (a) Pipes shall be laid parallel to other services whenever practicable.

- (b) Where a pipe crosses another utility, it shall be as close to perpendicular as practicable, and shall maintain minimum horizontal and vertical clearances as outlined by the other utility.
- (c) Where these are not provided, the minimum clearances shown in **Table 5-1** shall be observed. The clearances are between utility pipe/conduit barrels.

Table 5-1 – Minimum clearances from drains as measured between barrels

Utility	Minimum horizontal clearance (mm)	Minimum vertical clearance (mm) when crossing
Gas Mains	300	150
Telecommunications conduits and cables	300	150
Electricity conduits and cables	500	225
Other drains	300	150
Water mains	1000*	200 ⁺⁺

* or 1000 mm radial distance from watermain: i.e. horizontal can reduce when vertical increases.

⁺⁺ Wastewater pipes should always be vertically lower than water supply mains to reduce the risk of cross contamination due to a water main failure.

5.3 Materials

The following applies to materials for the drainage network:

- (a) All materials shall conform to the appropriate New Zealand Standard (NZS). Where no appropriate NZS exists for a particular material, then the Australian Standard (AS) shall be used; or failing that, the British Standard Specification (BS) shall apply.
- (b) All materials shall, at Wellington Water's discretion, be subject to test under the appropriate standard. Materials shall also be subject to Wellington Water's approval even though they conform to the appropriate standard specification.
- (c) Current approved products are listed in DESR_0001, the Approved Products Register, which is published on the Wellington Water website. Approvals are subject to change and care shall be taken that the most current version of the Approved Products Register is used.
- (d) Materials that do not comply with the prescribed standards and/or specifications listed shall only be used with the written permission of Wellington Water and only after it has been demonstrated through third party certification that the item complies with the required standards.
- (e) Materials used for construction and repairs shall be in a new condition and shall be suitable for the design life as required by the specification and associated standards.

5.3.1 Cement

The following applies to the use of cement:

- (a) General purpose Portland cement shall be used unless otherwise specified in the design.

- (b) Only dry, fresh cement shall be permitted for use in the manufacture of concrete.
- (c) Additives shall be used only where specified in the engineering drawings and only when permitted in writing by Wellington Water.

5.3.2 Sand

Sand shall be clean, sharp and free from dust, shell, soft particles, loam, vegetable and other debris. Sand shall be graded as specified in the design before it is incorporated into the works.

5.3.3 Reinforcing steel

Reinforcing steel shall comply with AS/NZS 4671. Reinforcing rods shall be free of scale rust and bent and placed in accordance with NZS 3109.

5.3.4 Mortar

Mortar shall consist of one part of cement to two parts of sand by volume, thoroughly mixed with water to form a paste of a consistency suitable for the particular purpose. No mortar shall be used when more than two hours old unless it has an appropriate retarder.

5.3.5 Non-structural concrete

The following applies to non-structural concrete:

- (a) All non-structural concrete shall have a minimum 28-day crushing strength of 17 MPa unless specified otherwise.
- (b) It is preferable that ready mix concrete be used, although concrete may be mixed on site using a concrete mixer.
 - (i) Hand mixing without the use of a concrete mixer will not be permitted.
 - (ii) Specified concrete with strengths greater than 25 MPa shall be supplied as ready mix and shall not be mixed on-site (see **Section 5.3.6 Structural concrete**).
 - (iii) Mixing shall be continued for at least two minutes and until the concrete is of an even colour and consistency throughout.
- (c) The proportion of coarse aggregate to fine aggregate shall be between the limits of 1:1 and 2:1, so as to give the most desirable results for dense, strong concrete. The quantities of coarse and fine aggregate shall be separately determined by dry, loose volume, or by equivalent weight. The maximum aggregate size shall be 20 mm.
- (d) The smallest quantity of water practicable shall be used to produce the desired workability and completion of the concrete.
- (e) The slump shall not exceed 100 mm when measured in a standard cone. Wellington Water may, under exceptional circumstances, permit a greater slump.
- (f) A minimum of 1 volume of cement to every 6 volumes of aggregate shall be used to give a minimum crushing strength at 28 days of 17 MPa. It should be noted when determining batch quantities that the crushing strength is dependent upon water content as well as cement content (i.e., the more water used, the weaker the concrete).
- (g) If required by Wellington Water, standard test blocks shall be cast and cured.

5.3.6 Structural concrete

The following are the minimum standards for structural concrete and may be superseded by specific design.

- (a) Measurements, mixing and delivery of materials shall be in accordance with NZS 3109 and NZS 3104, and the following conditions shall be observed:
 - (i) No addition of water to the concrete in the agitator or in the bin will be permitted.
 - (ii) No additives shall be used without the permission of Wellington Water.
 - (iii) Discharge of concrete from agitators and truck mixers shall be completed within one and a half hours after the introduction of mixing water to the cement or cement to the aggregates.
- (b) All structural concrete for cast in-situ reinforced bases and walls shall comply with NZS 3109 and shall have a minimum crushing strength of 30 Mpa at 28 days.
- (c) The cover of concrete over reinforcement from any surface exposed to sewage or the atmosphere above sewage shall be at 75 mm. Notwithstanding this, cover to reinforcement shall be as per NZS 3101.1&2 for the relevant exposure classification.
- (d) All bar intersections shall be tied with 16 gauge soft black iron wire and all ends of ties shall be bent into the body of the concrete away from the surface. No part of the wire ties shall protrude into the cover region.
- (e) Secure formwork shall be erected to form the sides of all concrete slabs, headwalls and anchor blocks. Concrete bearing surfaces on headwalls and anchor blocks shall be cast against undisturbed ground. No concrete shall be placed until the formwork and reinforcement has been inspected and approved by Wellington Water.
- (f) Wellington Water shall be given 24 hours' notice of any intention to place concrete and of the time the concrete has been ordered.
- (g) A smooth face finish is required on all faces except those permanently buried.
- (h) Surfaces shall be poured against clean plywood or steel faced shutters free from all blemishes and arranged to produce a smooth even and blemish free surface with no fins, offsets, air-holes or other disfigurements.
- (i) Covers for protection from water, rain or frost shall be used as required. Concrete shall not be placed in ponded or running water. Running water over fresh concrete is not permitted.
- (j) Concrete testing shall be prepared to standard 300 mm x 150 mm test blocks, if required. Slump tests may be required to be carried out on site. The contractor shall provide all test cylinders, slump cones, plates, trowels etc required for the testing of concrete.

5.3.7 Pipes

5.3.7.1 Concrete pipes

All concrete pipes:

- (a) Shall conform to AS/NZS 4058.
- (b) Shall have reached the equivalent of 7 days maturity before delivery to the site.

- (c) Shall be free from cracks, flaws and other defects. No reinforcing shall be visible nor any rust stains.

Where concrete pipes are to be:

- (d) Used for sewer applications, they shall be lined with a proprietary PE lining system or manufactured with suitable additives and sacrificial layer to achieve the durability requirements.
- (e) In contact with a marine environment, either internally or externally, they shall be designed and manufactured to comply with the requirements of AS/NZS 4058 for pipe suitable for a marine environment.

5.3.7.2 Vitrified clay pipes

Vitrified clay pipes, also known as earthenware or ceramic pipes, shall be Class 4 and manufactured to AS 1741. Rubber-ring jointed pipes only shall be used.

5.3.7.3 PE100 Pipes

PE100 pipe used for gravity drainage applications shall be:

- (a) Black in colour.
- (b) Certified as Series 1 pipe complying with AS/NZS 4130.
- (c) Permitted pipes sizes (outside diameter) are: 110, 160, 250, 315, 400, 450, 500, 560, 630, 710, 800, 900, 1000 mm.
- (d) Minimum wall thickness equating to a maximum standard dimension ratio (SDR) of SDR17, which may require consideration of the installation methods and any anticipated pulling forces and shall be confirmed suitable or amended to a thicker wall by the designer.

5.3.7.4 Steel Pipes

Steel pipes shall:

- (a) Be polyethylene tape coated and epoxy or concrete lined. Concrete linings shall have suitable additives and sufficient thickness to provide the required durability.
- (b) Be manufactured to NZS 4442, AS 1579 or BS 534. Steel pipes used for rising mains and other pressure applications shall comply with the requirements of **Section 6.2.6 Steel pipes**.
- (c) Be designed to ensure suitable provisions for flexibility have been accounted for to accommodate loading from seismic events, differential settlement or thermal expansion. This may be mechanical couplings, bellows or approved proprietary flexible joints.
- (d) Steel pipes shall otherwise be welded. Tied couplings/axial restraint shall be considered for all situations.

5.3.7.5 Ductile iron pipes

Ductile iron pipes shall comply with AS/NZS 2280, be a minimum PN20 and concrete or epoxy lined. Concrete linings shall have suitable additives and sufficient thickness to provide the required durability.

5.3.7.6 Fastenings and gaskets

The following applies to fastenings and gaskets:

- (a) All fastenings shall be selected to be compatible with the material to be fastened and to prevent galvanic corrosion.
- (b) Where fastenings such as nuts, bolts and washers are in a wet-well or in contact with sewage, 316 stainless fastenings shall be used. Anti-galling compounds shall be used on all stainless steel threads.
- (c) Where fastenings are:
 - (i) Exposed to an above ground environment, hot dipped galvanised fixtures may be used provided they can be wrapped with the full Denso system (primer, mastic, petrolatum tape and PVC outer wrap).
 - (ii) Buried, they shall be either hot dip galvanised or 316 stainless steel fastenings. All buried fastenings shall be wrapped with the full Denso system (primer, mastic, petrolatum tape and PVC outer wrap).
- (d) All flanges and rubber ring joints shall use ethylene-propylene diene monomer (EPDM) gaskets. Nitrile (NBR) shall be used where long-term exposure to hydrocarbons is anticipated.

5.3.7.7 PVC-U Pipes

The following applies to PVC-U pipes:

- (a) PVC-U pipes for non-pressure applications shall conform to AS/NZS 1260.
- (b) Only plain walled pipes will be accepted.
 - (i) Solid walled sandwich construction pipes will be accepted where there is no difference in density between sandwich layers.
 - (ii) Foam sandwich pipes will not be accepted.
- (c) Only rubber ring joints shall be used with PVC-U pipes.
 - (i) Solvent jointed pipes shall not be considered for public assets.
 - (ii) Rubber rings shall comply with AS 1646.
 - (iii) NBR rings shall be used where long-term exposure to hydrocarbons is anticipated.
- (d) Spigots and sockets of pipes shall be thoroughly cleaned immediately before jointing, and rubber rings shall be free from dust, dirt or grease.
- (e) Witness marks shall be marked and used as per the manufacturer's recommendations.
- (f) The rubber rings shall be mounted inside the socket and lubricated using a suitable lubricant (Medlube or other proprietary AS/NZS 4020 certified product).
- (g) The pipe shall be lined up and supported so as to be concentric with the pipes already laid in the same line. Pressure shall be applied to the socket end of the pipe. The spigot end shall be pushed into the preceding socket until the witness mark is just visible. The pipe shall NOT be pushed hard up against the back of the socket.

5.3.8 Manhole covers

The following applies to manhole covers:

- (a) Manhole covers shall be circular and of an approved type and shall be made from ductile iron. Cast iron lids may be used by special permission.
- (b) Only approved manhole covers shall be used on public drains.
- (c) All covers shall comply with a minimum load rating to AS 3996 Class D. Higher loadings may be required depending on the anticipated application (e.g., airports or loading yards).
- (d) General cover specifications are as follows:
 - (i) Sewer covers are to have two closed keyways (or one if hinged).
 - (ii) Stormwater covers are to have two open keyways (or one if hinged).
 - (iii) All covers shall fit the proprietary frame in any position without rocking. If necessary, the seating surfaces shall be machined.
 - (iv) The top surface of the frame and cover shall be flush.
 - (v) The frame and cover shall allow a 600 mm diameter minimum clear opening.
 - (vi) The cover shall be marked with the manufacturers name and year of manufacture.
- (e) Particular attention is drawn to the need to ensure that the covers shall not rock and that the gap between the manhole cover and the frame does not exceed 2 mm at any point.

5.3.8.1 Hinged covers

Hinged covers shall be:

- (a) Designed such that they can be installed with or without a captive hinge.
- (b) Designed such that they can open under surcharge between zero and 90 degrees without the hinge disengaging from the frame.
- (c) Able to “lock” into position once opened, to avoid accidental closure due to wind or impact.
- (d) Able to “unlock” from the upright position by manual means and without special equipment.
- (e) Able to be easily removed from the installed frame without special tools or excavation (unless it has a captive hinge for a specific reason).
- (f) Installed on existing manholes during renewals, upgrades or where new pipe connections are added, and as outlined in **Section 5.7.11.1 Hinged manhole covers**.

5.3.9 Maintenance shaft covers

Maintenance shaft, or cleaning eye/lamp hole, covers shall be:

- (a) Grey cast iron or ductile iron and of a design approved in writing by Wellington Water.

- (b) Designed to comply with a minimum load rating to AS 3996 Class D. Higher loadings may be required depending on the anticipated application (e.g., airports or loading yards).

5.4 Stormwater and Wastewater shutdowns

Please refer to the Wellington Water Shutdown Request process, which is available on the Wellington Water webpage.

5.5 Jointing and laying of pipes

5.5.1 General

The following applies to jointing and laying of drainage pipes:

- (a) New pipes shall be connected to existing pipes, whether mains or private laterals as set out in this section.
- (b) Where a new pipe is joined onto an existing rigid pipe, then:
 - (i) Only the minimum length of bedding shall be removed from beneath the existing pipe.
 - (ii) Where more than two pipe diameters of bedding is removed from beneath existing pipe, then the bedding shall be replaced with concrete to prevent the existing pipe end from shearing off at or near the joint. This is because it is not possible to adequately support this section of pipe by ramming bedding material under the pipe, and as such, “concrete bedding” is used to support the pipe end.
- (c) When connecting a new rigid pipe or PVC-U pipe to an existing pipe:
 - (i) The first preference always shall be for a rubber ring joint. New drains, including repairs consisting of more than one pipe, shall be joined using the manufacturers supplied joint. Rubber sleeve jointed earthenware drains and rubber sleeves with stainless steel wires are not permitted.
- (d) When normal rubber ring joints cannot be used, a Fernco connector, Fernco sleeve with stainless steel band clips, or a Naylor Band Seal Coupler, shall be used or a similar flexible connector or coupler approved in writing by Wellington Water. The connector or coupler DN end sizes shall match within 5 mm of the OD of the actual pipe end making the respective joint.

5.5.1.1 Joints in a liquefiable/sand environment

Where a rubber-ring/sleeved or flush joint is made in ground that is comprised of silt/sand or areas with a potential for liquefaction, the pipe joint shall be wrapped in filter-fabric that extends beyond the joint by a minimum of 450 mm in order to prevent the ingress of silt or sand in the event of a joint separation.

5.5.2 Changes in grade or direction

Changes in grade or direction between manholes shall be made using factory made bends. In exceptional circumstances, such as large diameter drains, the fabrication of epoxy jointed bends may be permitted for concrete pipes.

5.5.3 Repairs

Generally, repairs to pipes are carried out with the same material as the parent pipe.

5.5.4 Flush jointed concrete pipes

Flush jointed concrete pipes shall not normally be used, unless specifically approved by Wellington Water for exceptional circumstances. They shall be sealed with an approved sealant and epoxy. The sealant shall be guaranteed to give a watertight seal for 50 years.

5.5.5 Polyethylene pipe joints

Polyethylene pipes shall be joined using butt fusion or electrofusion welded methods. Butt fusion shall be used for directional drilling, pipe-bursting or slip-lining activities.

Joining new PE to existing PE shall be as set out in **Section 4.19 Polyethylene welding**.

5.5.5.1 Butt fusion jointing

See **Section 4.19.1 Butt fusion welding**.

5.5.5.2 Electrofusion jointing

See **Section 4.19.2 Electrofusion welding**.

5.5.6 Cathodic protection

See **Section 6.3.9 Cathodic protection**.

5.6 Water stops

The following applies to water stops (refer to **Standard Detail DR03 – Typical Trench and Waterstop Details**):

- (a) Water stops shall be constructed from 17 MPa concrete 150 mm thick, set a minimum of 150 mm into the sides and floor of the trench and shall extend 300 mm above the top of the pipe.
- (b) Where concrete or earthenware pipes are used, the water stop shall be constructed immediately downhill of the collar of the pipe.
- (c) If the drain is laid on metal (gravel) bedding and either subject to traffic loading or laid with more than 1.5 m of cover, then that portion of the pipe not encased by the water stop shall be supported on a concrete cradle along the full length of the pipe. This is to ensure the pipe is uniformly supported where subject to significant loading and the pipe is not subject to differential shear at the metal/concrete interface. The concrete bedding shall stop at the next pipe joint.
- (d) Where PE pipes are used, then where the pipe passes through the water stop, it should be wrapped in an elastic material (e.g., a rubber sleeve secured with wire ties) to enable the pipe to deform inside the water stop.

5.7 Manholes

5.7.1 Manhole design

The following applies to manhole design (refer to **Standard Detail DR01 – Manhole Details**):

- (a) Manholes shall be designed to withstand HN-HO-72 loadings as a minimum, or greater in areas where additional loading is anticipated, such as airports or loading yards. See **Section 5.7.10 Manhole lid construction** for loading requirements for manhole lids.
- (b) Risers shall typically be precast reinforced concrete units complying with AS/NZS 4058 as a minimum for manufacturing. The manufacturer is to certify the riser design is suitable for the design loading.
- (c) Specific internal linings may be specified depending on the potential effluent being transported, for example, sludge or centrate pipelines and manholes may require additional protection against corrosive gases and fluids.

5.7.1.1 Manhole design against liquefaction

Where new manholes are to be installed in areas identified with potential liquefaction, the following mitigations shall be employed:

- (a) Manhole risers, lids and bases shall be fastened together using proprietary riser section joiners.
- (b) Flanged precast concrete manhole bases shall be used.
- (c) The manhole excavation shall be lined with filter fabric prior to the manhole base being placed. The filter fabric shall encase the manhole *and* the backfill of the excavation.
- (d) The backfill shall be a compacted, non-cohesive, gap graded material (i.e., AP40 or similar).

5.7.2 Manhole construction

The following applies to manhole construction:

- (a) The diameter of cast-in-situ bases of precast manholes shall be at least 300 mm plus the outside diameter of the manhole and shall be at least 150 mm thick.
- (b) Manholes with a precast base shall be placed on a wet concrete bed or on 150 mm of bedding material.
- (c) Precast manhole bases shall be used for all manholes constructed below the water-table or sea level.
- (d) Manholes shall have the minimum practical number of risers. For the majority of manholes, only one riser will be necessary.
 - (i) If more than one riser is used, a layer of mortar or an appropriate epoxy shall be placed on the joint before positioning the next riser, or
 - (ii) Proprietary rubber rings or butyl mastic strips shall also be used to seal between riser sections. Rubber rings shall be appropriately lubed and set before jointing.
 - (iii) Similarly, a layer of mortar shall be placed on the top of the top riser before placing the manhole roof.

- (iii) Epoxy **shall not** be used between the lid and the riser in case the lid needs to be removed in the future.
- (e) For sewer manholes, all joints, except that between the top riser and the lid, shall be internally sealed with mortar, epoxy, butyl mastic strips or proprietary rubber rings. Joints between risers shall also be externally sealed with epoxy or other approved sealant. This external sealing is in addition to the internal sealing between risers.
- (f) Where the manhole riser is the same diameter as, or smaller than the pipe diameter, then:
 - (i) **Either** the manhole shall be formed by pouring concrete around the pipe up to near the top of the pipe and sitting the riser on the concrete haunch so formed. The riser shall be supported by the concrete haunch and not by the pipe. The opening into the drain shall be formed by cutting the top of the drain off and the size of the opening shall approximate the diameter of the riser.
 - (ii) **Or** a precast manhole tee shall be used. Tee manholes in road reserve or any other location likely to receive traffic loading shall be designed and installed to take full HN-HO-72 loading or greater if additional loading is anticipated. A copy of the manufacturer's installation specification shall be given to Wellington Water. Alternatively, the lid can be isolated from the riser such that traffic loading is not transferred to the pipe. This may entail using an oversized lid supported by a ring-beam that is not structurally connected to the riser.

5.7.3 Manhole rungs

The following applies to manhole rungs:

- (a) Rungs shall be installed in all manholes deeper than 1 m unless there is a specific dispensation approved by Wellington Water.
- (b) Rungs shall be a "drop step" type and shall be constructed from 15 mm (minimum) 316 or 316L grade stainless steel.
- (c) A 304 or 304L grade stainless steel may be used in stormwater environments. They shall have stainless steel nuts and washers and a rubber washer at the back of the manhole as a water seal.
- (d) For drainage manholes, the alignment of the rungs shall be parallel to the flow as much as possible so as not to interfere with rodding activities.
- (e) The manhole lid shall be oriented such that the entry hole is above the rungs.
- (f) The first manhole rung shall be between 500 mm and 675 mm below the finished ground level.

5.7.4 Manhole safety grilles

Manhole safety grilles shall meet the following requirements:

- (a) Manhole safety grilles shall comply with AS3996 Class A.
- (b) Grilles shall be constructed from stainless steel 316L grade or an approved alternative material with adequate strength and corrosion properties.

- (c) The maximum opening size of any section of the grille fit and surface shall not be able to pass a sphere larger than 150mm diameter. All products shall be marked in accordance with the conformity assessment body's (e.g., AS/NZS) requirements.
- (d) Manhole safety grilles product certification (ISO Type 5) to AS3996 Class A. This certification shall include the fit to the access lid frame design meeting the specified load requirements.

5.7.5 Connections to manholes

The following applies to manhole connections:

- (a) On all earthenware and concrete pipes entering (and leaving) a manhole, a flexible joint shall be provided within 2.5 times the outside diameter of the pipe or 700 mm of the outside edge of the manhole base, whichever is the lesser.
- (b) PVC-U and PE pipes shall not be fixed to manholes until the temperature of the main has returned to ambient ground temperature.
- (c) PVC-U pipes entering and leaving a manhole shall be fixed to manholes using factory made fittings.
- (d) PE pipes shall be fixed to manholes either by the use of a puddle flange or by strips welded onto the pipe.
 - (i) Only the outlet pipe is to be flanged to the manhole.
 - (ii) The inside face of this flange shall be flush with the inside of the manhole wall.
 - (iii) Inlet pipes shall extend no less than 60 mm and no more than 100 mm into the manhole and butt against the benching/tiling.
 - (iv) The inlet pipes shall be sealed against the manhole wall, but not anchored.
- (e) All sewer leads shall enter through the benching.
- (f) Sump leads and normally dry stormwater leads may enter the manhole over the benching.

5.7.6 Expansion joints on PE pipes at manholes

The following applies to expansion joints on PE pipes at manholes:

- (a) Normally the connection of PE to a manhole is 'fixed' into the manhole wall by use of a stub-flange anchoring the pipe into the manhole wall with epoxy-mortar and/or concrete.
- (b) Where the incoming sewage is likely to have wide temperature fluctuations (e.g. due to significant volumes of process hot water), then suitable double rubber seal expansion joints fixed into the manhole wall may be necessary to accommodate the calculated longitudinal expansion and contraction of the PE pipe.
- (c) Usually, an expansion joint is necessary at each end of the pipe, with an anchored sleeve at the centre of the pipe length to ensure $\frac{1}{2}$ of the total movement takes place at each joint.
- (d) The positioning of the pipe end within the expansion joint at construction shall be set according to the pipe ambient temperature, in relation to the expected temperature related movement.

- (e) Specific design is required, as pipe movement is significantly reduced with increasing pipe depths.
- (f) Laterals shall be connected at the manhole, or at the anchor sleeve.

5.7.7 Benching of manholes

The following applies to the benching of manholes:

- (a) Manholes shall have a formed invert from inlet to outlet.
- (b) Earthenware tiles and half pipes shall be used on all sewer pipes.
- (c) Stormwater pipes may have benching formed from concrete half-pipes, or from in-situ placed concrete with a minimum 25 MPa strength trowelled to produce a smooth finish.
- (d) Above the tile level, the channel shall have vertical 25 MPa concrete walls formed to the level of the outlet pipe soffit to form a full pipe depth channel through the manhole.
- (e) The tiles etc used to form the invert shall be cut neatly as appropriate to form an invert with minimum spacing between the tiles.
- (f) The gap between the tiles shall be filled with epoxy mortar.
- (g) Bends must be sufficiently gentle for the flow not to leave the channel and deposit debris on the benching. As a guide, 45-degree springs or less would normally be required.
- (h) Manholes shall be constructed to allow all drains entering (and leaving) the manhole to be inspected by a closed-circuit television (CCTV) camera. The size of the camera shall be taken as 470 long x 130 wide x 85 high (with 130 mm being the width to the outside of the wheels).

5.7.8 Manholes on large pipelines

Where a manhole is required on a large pipeline, and where the manhole riser diameter is required to be smaller than the pipe it is connected to (an off-take riser), the installation shall be as follows:

- (a) The manhole lid shall be isolated from the riser such that the traffic load is not transferred through riser to the connection with the pipe. This can be achieved by using an oversized lid which is resting on a suitably designed ring-beam surrounding but not connected to the off-take riser.
- (b) The top of the off-take riser shall be 150 mm below the underside of the lid.
- (c) The gap between the off-take riser and the ring-beam shall be sealed with Sikaflex or similarly flexible sealant approved in writing by Wellington Water, at the top of the off-take riser.

5.7.9 Drops at manholes

External drop structures are not permitted within either the stormwater or wastewater network.

5.7.9.1 Haunched internal drop structures

The following applies to the construction of haunched internal drops:

- (a) Normally dry stormwater drains DN 300 or smaller (e.g., sump leads) may enter on top of the benching, and do not require a haunched drop.
- (b) A haunched internal drop in a manhole shall not exceed 500 mm from the inlet invert, to the receiving invert. Drops up to this height are to be benched in the manhole.
- (c) Drops greater than 500 mm in wastewater manholes may be achieved through using an internal drop structure as described in **Section 5.7.9.2 Internal drop structures**.
- (d) Haunched internal drops will not be permitted on sewer pipes greater than DN 225 (nominal bore) or DN 300 on stormwater pipes.

5.7.9.2 Internal drop structures

Internal drop structures (see **Standard Detail DR02 – Internal Drop Details**):

- (a) Will not normally be considered for stormwater applications but are acceptable within wastewater systems.
- (b) Will not be permitted to be installed in an existing manhole, as there will be inadequate room in the manhole for the drop whilst retaining working room.
- (c) Shall be avoided, where possible, by laying the approaching drain at a shallow grade, then descending to the manhole invert through a steep section of pipe at the final approach. A manhole is required at either end of the steep approaching inlet drain.
- (d) Are required on wastewater systems where the approaching inlet grade is greater than 45 degrees. Internal drop pipework shall be designed to be clear of the design flow and the discharge shall be to a haunched channel. Internal drop pipes shall not be larger than 225 mm diameter (nominal bore). The minimum size for a manhole with an internal drop structure is the nominal manhole diameter plus the drop pipe outside diameter.
- (e) Shall be fabricated from PVC-U, ABS or stainless-steel pipe.
- (f) Shall ensure all discharge from the incoming pipe is collected by the drop structure and conveyed to the manhole floor without surcharge or “over-splashing”.
- (g) Shall be securely fastened to the wall with stainless steel fasteners.
- (h) Shall allow unobstructed access to the inlet of the incoming pipeline for the purposes of rodding and inspection.
- (i) Shall permit unobstructed access to the drop structure pipe, through the top, for rodding and inspection.

5.7.10 Manhole lid construction

The following applies to manhole lids:

- (a) Manholes in road reserves shall be designed to withstand HN-HO-72 loadings as a minimum.
- (b) Manholes in areas where vehicles cannot access, such as hill sections, back sections or pedestrian access ways, may use lighter duty lids which shall have a minimum

thickness of 150 mm for manholes up to and including 900 mm nominal internal diameter or 200 mm thick for manholes with a nominal diameter 1050 mm and larger.

- (c) Manholes shall have the nominal 600 mm diameter or 1200 mm x 600 mm (for water supply) opening to the side which shall be placed above the manhole rungs. Rungs shall be aligned perpendicular to the main flow. The closest edge of the opening shall typically be between 100 mm and 200 mm from the inside wall of the manhole riser, or with up to 300 mm with written approval from Wellington Water.
- (d) The finished ground level shall be a minimum of 150 mm above the top of the manhole lid, and no more than 300 mm. Where a distance of 300 mm is likely to be exceeded, a new manhole riser section shall be used to raise the lid to within acceptable tolerances.

5.7.10.1 Adjustment rings

Adjustment rings shall:

- (a) Be manufactured from 40 MPa concrete.
- (b) Have minimum cover to reinforcement of 50 mm from the inside face and 40 mm from the outside face.
- (c) Be internally reinforced with a minimum of D12 reinforcement with the entire ring being suitable for HN-HO-72 loading when installed as designed. This will typically result in a ring with a top-face width of around 105 mm.
- (d) Sit on a bed of mortar between the lid and the adjustment ring to ensure a non-rocking interface with the lid.
 - (i) Epoxy mortar is NOT to be used for this purpose to enable future removal of the ring if required.
 - (ii) Butyl mastic strips or sealants shall be used where the manhole is in the berm and surface water ingress is expected.

5.7.10.2 Raising a manhole

Where a manhole frame and cover are to be raised, but the lid or slab remain at the same level, then the following approach shall be followed:

- (a) Packing may be placed between the manhole slab/lid and frame, but this additional packing shall not exceed 100 mm.
- (b) The packing shall be precast concrete adjustment rings. Bricks shall not be used for this purpose. Mortar may only be used to bed the adjustment ring and frame.
- (c) The total packing (sum of packing between the frame and lid/slab) shall not exceed 300 mm. Where the required packing would exceed this amount, the manhole lid (or alternatively the manhole slab in recent WCC manholes) shall be raised instead by building up the supporting walls.
- (d) Manhole walls shall be raised using the same construction technique as the existing walls. Precast manholes shall be raised using the minimum possible number of precast risers. Brick manholes shall be raised using a double row of bricks.

- (e) In WCC, where a slab of an existing manhole (for drainage) needs to be raised, this shall be achieved using bricks, concrete paving stones or concrete adjustment blocks. The slab shall be raised no greater than 300 mm above the lid. Mortar shall be used to bed and seal the bricks, stones or blocks.

5.7.11 Manhole frame and covers

The following applies to manhole frames and covers:

- (a) Only approved manhole covers shall be used on public drains.
- (b) All covers shall comply with a minimum load rating to AS 3996 Class D (see also **Section 5.3.8 Manhole covers**).
- (c) Covers on wastewater manholes shall have factory fitted, water-tight gaskets to prevent against surface water ingress.
- (d) The opening in the manhole lid shall be aligned above any manhole rungs which shall typically be aligned such that entry is perpendicular to the flow. The frame and cover shall be aligned over the lid's access opening.
- (e) The cover shall be finished flush with final ground level and shall not rock. Particular care shall be taken in carriageways and footpaths, both public and private, to ensure that the cover is flush.
- (f) Where the manhole cover is to be set at an angle, the frame level can be set using 25 mm wide timber shims or steel set screws through the frame flange. The frame shall be set in a bed of mortar in between the lid or adjustment ring. Any set screws shall be removed after setting of the frame on the mortar to ensure full load engagement between the frame and the mortar. Timber shims may remain as these will compress and transfer the load.
- (g) On completion of the manhole, the keyways shall be left clean and free of any debris. There should be silicone placed in the key-way to prevent the key-way from filling with debris between construction and inspection.
- (h) The frame and any adjustment rings shall be haunched with 20 MPa concrete up to 25 mm below the finished ground level. A gradually tapering rounded haunch profile is required from the manhole lid to the frame with minimum of 50 mm cover to embedded adjustment rings.
- (i) A light duty frame shall only be used where there is no vehicular traffic or possibility of vehicular traffic in the future.

5.7.11.1 Hinged manhole covers

Hinged covers shall be:

- (a) Installed on existing manholes during renewals, upgrades or where new pipe connections are added.
- (b) Oriented such that the hinge is oriented towards oncoming traffic, where installed in the carriageway. Should the lid pop open under surcharge, the cover will present a 'ramp' to oncoming traffic as opposed to a raised edge.

5.7.12 Changes in grade and direction

All changes in grade and direction shall be made within the manholes unless specifically detailed on the approved plans. Changes in grade and direction outside of manhole, where permitted, shall be formed using factory formed, smooth radius bends or similar.

5.7.13 Repairs to manholes

Minor repairs to manholes may be made by sealing leaks with Sikadur/Sikaflex, or a similar product approved in writing by Wellington Water, then making a more permanent repair by chemical or cement grouting.

5.7.14 Terminal rising-main manholes

Terminal rising-main manholes shall be designed such that turbulence is minimised as the discharge transitions from pressure to gravity flow.

Manholes that receive a rising-main discharge shall be:

- (a) Lined with a coating or protective layer resistant to protect the concrete from hydrogen sulphide attack (if the manhole is of concrete construction).
- (b) Vented to the atmosphere. Odour treatment may be required if the manhole is located in a built-up area. Odour treatment may require the vent to be force ventilated.
- (c) Designed to prevent turbulence where the rising-main discharge traverses any change in grade and where the discharge enters the main flow channel.
- (d) The downstream pipeline may also need corrosion protection.
- (e) The downstream capacity of the network shall also be taken into consideration during the design stage.

5.8 Field drains

The following applies to field drains:

- (a) Field drains shall be constructed from standard drainage pipes slotted to admit water. The slots shall be restricted to the top half of the pipe. All conditions relating to laying of pipes would normally apply to field drains.
- (b) Perforated coil drain shall be heavy walled, smooth bore polyethylene with a minimum ring stiffness of 500 N/m/m at 5% deflection and comply with AS 2439.1.
- (c) Flexible field drains laid with a main to remove trench water should be laid above the main or if laid beside the main, laid sufficiently far from the main to enable both pipes to be adequately backfilled with compacted material.
- (d) Field drains should preferably be connected into a street channel or manhole rather than direct into a stormwater main. Field drains connected into a stormwater manhole may join in above the benching.

5.9 Testing

The following applies to testing of drains:

- (a) Testing of drains shall be by either the water test or low pressure air test as outlined in this section (based on tests prescribed in New Zealand Building Code E1/VM1).
- (b) For subdivisions, the following requirements must be met:
 - (i) All sewer and stormwater pipes will be tested upon completion of construction at the applicant's expense and as part of Wellington Water's approval process.
 - (ii) Wellington Water's representative shall be present during the test and will sign any appropriate documentation to verify the test if successful.
 - (iii) A minimum of 24 hours of notice is required to be given to the Wellington Water prior to the test being carried out.
 - (iv) The developer shall provide all fittings, water and materials to carry out the test.
 - (v) The developer is required to have met the following requirements prior to pipe testing and Wellington Water arriving on site:
 - 1. Trenched and pipes laid.
 - 2. Bedding and surround material, top and bottom, shall have been laid over the pipe. Minimum 100 mm top and bottom of pipe.
 - 3. All pipe junctions exposed, including laterals and inspection eyes.
 - 4. Lines flushed and all residual debris cleaned out.
 - 5. All fittings and connection to have been installed prior to pressure test.
 - 6. Lines to have been pressurised overnight to the required pressure prior to the test commencing.
- (c) For renewals, all mains and branch pipelines, including connections, may be tested after backfilling.

5.9.1 Water test

The following applies to water testing of drainage pipes:

- (a) The upstream end of the section under test shall have a minimum head of 1.5 m above the pipe soffit. The maximum head at the lower end of the pipeline shall be 6 m.
- (b) Concrete and earthenware pipes shall be soaked for 24 hours prior to the test.
- (c) Care shall be taken to ensure that all air is expelled when filling the pipe with water.
- (d) For concrete and ceramic pipes, the amount of leakage shall not exceed 0.5 mL water per mm pipe diameter per m pipe length per hour measured over a minimum period of 30 minutes. This is equivalent to 2.25 litres of leakage in 30 minutes for a 30 m long 300 mm diameter pipeline.
- (e) For PVC-U and PE pipes, there shall be no leakage after 5 minutes.

5.9.2 Low pressure air test

The following applies to the low-pressure air test for drainage pipes:

- (a) The low-pressure air test is applicable to pipelines only and should not be used where new manholes are required to be tested also.
- (b) It is recommended concrete and earthenware pipes are soaked prior to the test being completed to ensure a positive test.
- (c) Air is to be introduced into the pipeline until a pressure of 3 kPa is reached (300 mm water gauge pressure).
- (d) Time is to be allowed for the air temperature to become uniform and pressure to stabilise, typically at least 3 minutes.
- (e) The air supply is to be disconnected and the pressure drop measured after 5 minutes.
- (f) The pipeline is acceptable if the pressure drop does not exceed 0.5 kPa (50 mm water gauge pressure).
- (g) The low-pressure air test is highly susceptible to temperature fluctuations. A 1° C change in temperature can result in a 30 mm change in water gauge pressure. It is recommended to soak concrete and ceramic pipes prior to low-pressure air tests.

5.9.3 Testing of concrete manholes

The following applies to concrete manhole testing:

- (a) Manholes may not be required to be tested, given that the allowable leakage (1 millilitre/millimetre diameter/meter length) over the typically short depth of the manhole is optically difficult to detect.
 - (i) Notwithstanding this, all manhole joints shall be sealed and any obvious sign of infiltration or exfiltration shall be remedied prior to commissioning.

5.9.4 CCTV inspection

Wellington Water shall require the drain to be inspected with a colour CCTV camera as follows:

- (a) This inspection shall be additional to the water or air test.
- (b) Any defects detected by the camera inspection shall be made good and the relevant section of pipeline tested again.
- (c) Developers are advised to carry out their own test before backfilling the trench.
- (d) Acceptance of the drain will not be given until it has passed the water or air test and any CCTV inspection required.

5.9.5 Pressure line testing

Any pipelines that are subject to pressure, such as pumped rising mains or high-pressure inverted siphons, shall be tested to the same requirements as a water supply pipeline of an equivalent material and pressure class.

5.10 Wastewater pumping stations

5.10.1 General

The following applies to wastewater pumping stations:

- (a) The station site shall be on a separately titled lot on the subdivision with a sealed vehicle access to a formed road. The lot shall be vested to the council.
 - (i) Architectural featuring of any visible structures shall be within the context of the proposed subdivision and shall be subject to the approval of Wellington Water.
 - (ii) The minimum standard for fencing is a 1.8 m high, 50mm diamond, 2.5 wire diameter chain link fence with rails top and bottom. In residential areas, fence design shall be considered within the context of the neighbourhood and/or agreed with adjacent landowners.
- (b) Wastewater pumping stations are required to:
 - (i) Pump 120% of the design peak wet weather flow (PWWF) in a duty, or duty assist arrangement with at least one other pump on standby. All pumps shall be of the same make and model.
 - (ii) The duty shall be interchangeable between pumps.
 - (iii) Have an operating wet-well storage sized to limit the maximum number of pump starts to 12 per hour, or per the manufacturer's recommendation, whichever is less.
- (c) As the pumps will be operating at dry-weather flow conditions most of the time, the selected pump shall be suitable for operating for long durations at the dry weather duty. Efficiency can be sacrificed when the pumps are operating at their wet weather duty, although they shall still be suitable to operate at this higher duty.
- (d) Wet-wells shall be vented to prevent the build-up of corrosive gases. Fan assisted activated carbon odour control shall be provided in all residential and commercial/retail areas, however consideration will be given to reducing this requirement depending on the environment and any consents required under regional plan rules for discharges to air.
- (e) Chamber lids and access covers shall be capable of withstanding HN-HO-72 loadings and shall also comply with the requirements of AS 3996 Class D.
- (f) For wet wells and dry wells, lids shall be constructed to provide a minimum 1200 x 600 mm clear opening to allow for access and the movement of parts and equipment.
- (g) All valves shall be operable either from the surface or from within a drywell/valve chamber. Valves, including isolation valves and non-return valves but excluding foot-valves, shall not be installed in the wet-well.
- (h) The internal walls, floor and ceiling of all wet-wells shall be protected from corrosion using sulphate resistant linings or construction materials. Internal walls and ceiling shall be coated with: Sikagard 62, or Mastermix Multi-cote, or an equivalent.
- (i) The internal walls, floor and ceiling of all dry-wells shall be lined with a Wellington Water approved sealant to assist with cleaning and maintenance.
- (j) Floors of all dry wells shall be slip resistant.

- (k) Chambers shall be designed to prevent floatation (with consideration given to possible liquefaction) and chamber latches shall be designed to be impervious to inflow and infiltration.
- (l) Access hatches shall be large enough to easily remove equipment and light enough to be lifted safely by one person, gas assisted hatches may be necessary at larger installations; a hinged safety grill will be installed below each access hatch, however each installation will be considered separately.

5.10.2 Equipment requirements

Wastewater pumping stations are required to:

- (a) Be metered using a full bore magnetic flow meter either each pump individually or on the common discharge.
- (b) Have an approved non-return valve on each discharge pipe between the discharge isolation valve and the pump.
- (c) Have a resilient-seated isolation valve to isolate the pump from any common discharge.
- (d) Have a resilient-seated isolation valve on the pump suction (if in a dry-well arrangement).
- (e) All valves in ground and buildings, for both trunk main and reticulation mains, shall be clockwise closing. All valves shall include a tag or other means to clearly indicate closing direction.
- (f) Have an approved pressure transducer on each wet-well recording the wet-well level accurate to ± 10 mm.
- (g) Have an approved pressure transducer on the discharge recording the pressure to ± 1 kPa (100 mm H₂O).
- (h) Have a dry-well sump pump that discharges back into the wet-well (if in a dry-well arrangement). The sump pump shall sit in a sump at least 300 mm deep and be controlled by floats that start prior to the water level reaching the top of the sump wall and stops when the water level recedes 50 mm above the pump volute. The sump pump should be able to handle solids up to 30 mm diameter as a minimum.
- (i) Have guide-rails and a self-seating discharge bend (if in a wet-well arrangement) to ensure the pump is lowered into place without fouling or requiring manual connection.
- (j) Have a 316 stainless steel chain fixed to each pump to enable the lifting and lowering of any submersible pumps into position.
- (k) Have an air-release mechanism between the pump and the non-return valve to promote self-priming in the event of an air-lock (if in a dry-well arrangement). The air discharge from the valve is to be piped back into the wet-well.
- (l) Have a tapping on the common discharge with a 25 mm BSP male/female stainless steel ball valve fitted with lever handle with a manual safety release.
- (m) Have single bellows mechanically isolating the pump from the suction and discharge pipe. Tie rods are not to be used with the bellows (dry-well installations).

- (n) Have a metered water supply with reduced pressure zone (RPZ) backflow preventer installed to allow for wash-down and connection of the wet well and storage tank washer systems. The supply shall be fitted with a tap connection with 20 mm BSP (minimum) thread to allow fitting of a hose. The water service connection shall be minimum DN32 terminating in a stainless steel lockable cabinet adjacent to the wet well.

5.10.3 Pipework

The following applies to wastewater pumping station pipework:

- (a) Pipework shall be ductile iron manufactured to AS/NZS 2280 and fusion epoxy bonded coated to AS/NZS 4158.
- (b) Pipework shall have a minimum pressure rating of PN16 unless the design working pressure requires a higher pressure class.
- (c) Flanged or spigoted bends, tees and “specials” fabricated from STCL may be permitted where ductile iron fittings are not practicable. These shall be manufactured to the requirements of NZS 4442 with the external surface either polyethylene tape wrapped or epoxy coated to AS/NZS 3862. An epoxy coating is to be applied over the internal concrete lining.
- (d) Special abrasion resistant linings may need to be considered where pipework has a history of high grit and flow velocities. A specialist abrasion resistant coating maybe required where velocities exceed 4 m/s.
- (e) ABS pipework may be used provided the pipe is suitably isolated from vibration. Stub flanges shall be used with backing rings; plastic flanges will not be permitted under any circumstances. All fitting in ABS are to be fabricated by the supplier.
- (f) Flanges shall comply with the following:
 - (i) Ductile iron flanges shall comply with the latest revision of AS/NZS 4087 Figure B5.
 - (ii) Carbon steel flanges shall comply with the latest revision of AS/NZS 4087 Figure B7.
 - (iii) No other flange materials shall be permissible.
- (g) The inlet pipe from the network to the wet-well shall enter the wet-well above the all-pumps-start level such that the inlet flow is not affected by backflow from the station wet-well under normal PWWF operating conditions.

All pipework:

- (h) Crossing a soil-structure interface shall be designed to withstand differential movement due to settlement or seismic movement.
- (i) Shall be supported and designed to withstand seismic forces as per NZS 4219.
- (j) In the wet-well shall be welded or flanged 316/316L stainless steel or ABS.
- (k) Shall be arranged such that the rising main can drain directly into the wet-well.

5.10.4 Pumps

Pumps shall be:

- (a) Of a non-clogging type with a minimum through-let of 75 mm where practicable. Hardened impellers shall be specified when ordering.
- (b) Rated capable of a minimum 8 starts per hour when started direct online.
- (c) Operated using a variable speed drive if rated 5 kW or greater.
- (d) Be selected to have its duty point within $\pm 10\%$ of the best efficiency point (BEP) unless otherwise approved by Wellington Water.
- (e) The minimum pump efficiency at the duty point shall not be less than 50%. Lower efficiencies may be approved in cases where:
 - (i) The pumps are very small, or
 - (ii) The pump curve is very flat thus resulting in low energy use, or
 - (iii) Meeting this specification would result in excessive clogging.

5.10.5 Dry-well installations

The following applies to dry-well installations:

- (a) Concrete plinths shall be used for dry-well plinths.
- (b) Steel pump supports may be considered with ductile iron and/or steel suction and discharge pipework, which are less susceptible to vibration.
- (c) Steel plinths will not be considered where ABS pipe is used.
- (d) Forced positive ventilation to the dry-well should be used, with a fan blowing air in at the top and expelled from the pipe within 900 mm of the dry-well floor.
 - (i) The number of air-changes shall comply with the NZBC for an occupied space.
 - (ii) Prior to entry into the dry-well, operators are to have a clear line-of-site to the operating status of the ventilation system to confirm it is operational. This may require the installation of an additional alert system at the entry point.
 - (iii) Both the inlet pipe and the outlet ventilation pipes shall be to an external space with good natural ventilation and with both the inlet and outlet suitably separated to avoid mixing of the exhaust and incoming air.
- (e) Dry-well hatches for below ground dry-wells shall be sealed against water ingress. They shall have a minimum load rating of AS 3996 Class D. Access openings shall be fitted with a protective screen which will prevent accidental falls into the dry-well when the hatch is open.
- (f) The dry-well is to include a gantry system (or similar) which will enable pumps to be lifted to a lay down area. There shall be provision for suitably sized lay down area as well as a mechanical system in place to lift pumps from the lay down area to outside the dry-well.
- (g) For each pump the minimum working room around the pumps shall be 600 mm
- (h) The minimum working room in front of the control switchboard shall be 1200 mm.
- (i) Flow meters and the control switchboard are to be housed within the dry-well unless dispensation is granted by Wellington Water.

- (j) Bellows shall be installed on the delivery side and considered on the suction side of the pump, unless agreed otherwise with Wellington Water, to manage vibration and noise through the pipework.
- (k) Dry-well installations shall have smoke detectors and emergency lighting connected to SCADA for alarming.

5.10.6 Electrical specification

The electrical design shall take into account the following:

- (a) The electrical and SCADA specification and standard design shall be obtained from Wellington Water prior to design.
- (b) The control switchboard shall be provided with a plug and wiring capable of allowing an emergency generator of a suitable size to power the station to start and maintain the station's design duty point at design peak wet-weather flow.
- (c) The form of connection (plug or tails) must be approved by Wellington Water.

5.10.7 Private wastewater pumping stations

In addition to the above specification, the following shall be applied to private wastewater pumping stations that are not associated with a smart pressure sewer system:

- (a) Pumps shall have an open multi-channelled impellor with a macerator/grinder on the intake (allowing maximum 8 mm free passing). Pumps shall also have thermal overload protection and a liquid temperature rating of 40°C.
- (b) Materials and design shall have minimum 50 years durability.
- (c) The rising main shall be a minimum of 63 mm OD high performance polyethylene (PE100) standard dimension ratio 11 (SDR11).
- (d) 90-degree bends are not permitted on pipes less than 90mm OD. The preference is to use a long radius or swept bend constructed from a section of pipe. Two 45-degree bends may be used where required.
- (e) All controls, electrical equipment and cables are to be provided with suitable weatherproof enclosures and sited above 1% AEP flood level.
- (f) The station shall be fitted with an audible and visual alarm system indicating pump failure and overflow.
- (g) Additional emergency storage or an emergency disposal field may be required depending on the surrounding environs and scope of the development.
- (h) For pumping stations associated with smart pressure sewer systems, please contact Wellington Water for the latest guidance.

5.11 Stormwater pumping stations

5.11.1 General

The following applies to stormwater pumping stations:

- (a) Wet-well pumping arrangements are generally acceptable and considered practicable for large installations.

- (b) Submersible pumps shall be installed on guides (centrifugal pumps) or in casings (axial flow pumps) and shall be provided with a means to remove them without draining of the wet-well or taking the station out of operation.
- (c) Electrical equipment shall be housed in a cabinet or structure that can be suitably accessed during wet-weather without compromising operator safety or safe operation of the station.
- (d) Stormwater pumping stations are required to:
 - (iv) Pump the design flow in a duty, or duty-assist (or multiple assist) arrangement with one pump on standby.
 - (v) Have an operating regime and system that limits the number of pump starts to 8 per hour.
- (e) A metered water supply and tap outlet shall be provided to the immediate vicinity of the station and fitted with an approved RPZ backflow preventer.
- (f) The station site shall be on a separately titled lot on the subdivision with a sealed vehicle access to a formed road. The lot shall be vested to the council.
- (g) If required by council or Wellington Water, the site shall be secured to prevent public access as outlined by Wellington Water.
 - (i) Architectural featuring of any visible structures shall be within the context of the proposed subdivision and shall be subject to the approval of Wellington Water.
 - (ii) The minimum standard for fencing is a 1.8 m high, 50 mm diamond, 2.5 mm wire diameter chain link fence with rails top and bottom. In residential areas, fence design shall be considered within the context of the neighbourhood and/or agreed with adjacent landowners.
- (h) Chamber lids shall provide access openings centrally over each pump and shall be designed to withstand HN-HO-72 loadings and rated to a minimum of AS 3996 Class D.
- (i) Access openings shall be provided with protective screens to prevent people from falling into the chamber while maintenance is being carried out.
- (j) The wet well shall be designed such that the wet well can be isolated from the reticulation and drained without compromising minor stormwater flows. Isolation can be via a penstock gate or stop-logs specifically stored on-site.

5.11.2 Equipment requirements

Stormwater pumping stations are required to:

- (a) Have an appropriate means to stop recirculation of pumped water either by non-return gate or motorised penstock.
- (b) Have an isolation valve to enable the isolation and inspection/removal of any pump.
- (c) Have an approved pressure transducer/probe on the suction side of the pumps to record levels/pressure to ± 10 mm H₂O (0.1kPa).
- (d) Have an approved pressure transducer/probe on the discharge side of the station recording the pressure to ± 10 mm H₂O (0.1kPa).
- (e) Have bar screens or similar to prevent rubbish entering the pump volute. A means of accessing and cleaning the screens shall be included in the design.

5.11.3 Pumps

The following applies to stormwater pumps:

- (a) All pumps in a station shall be of the same make and model.
- (b) Pumps shall be submersible pumps with a non-clogging hardened impellor.
- (c) Pumps shall be rated capable of a minimum 8 starts per hour when started direct online.
- (d) Valves shall isolate all pumps and incorporate an easily dismantled pipe joint near the pump, which enables easy removal of the pump.
- (e) Each duty pump shall be capable of passing all required flows up to and including the design flow without exceeding the restriction on the number of starts.
- (f) Where practical, the pumps shall be installed in a duty-standby arrangement with each pump capable of accommodating the full flow. The duty shall be interchangeable between pumps.
- (g) Where multiple pumps are used, only one pump is required to be on standby while the others are on duty or assist; for example, in a three-pump arrangement, the full design flow can be carried by only two pumps with one pump on standby.

5.11.4 Pipework

The following applies to stormwater pumping station pipework:

- (a) Pipework shall be ductile iron manufactured to AS/NZS 2280 and fusion epoxy bonded coated to AS/NZS 4158.
- (b) Pipework shall have a minimum pressure rating of PN16 unless the design working pressure requires a higher-pressure class.
- (c) STCL shall also be permitted manufactured to NZS 4442 and either polyethylene tape wrapped and concrete lined at the fabricators, or epoxy coated to AS/NZS 3862. AWWA M11¹¹ may also be used for the design of steel pipes.
- (d) Suitably rated concrete pressure pipes may also be used for low pressure scenarios (less than 10 metres pressure).
- (e) Special abrasion resistant linings may need to be considered where pipework is expected to have high flow velocities. A specialist abrasion resistant coating maybe required where velocities exceed 4 m/s.
- (f) Flanges shall comply with the following:
 - (i) Ductile iron flanges shall comply with the latest revision of AS/NZS 4087 Figure B5.
 - (ii) Carbon steel flanges shall comply with the latest revision of AS/NZS 4087 Figure B7.
 - (iii) No other flange materials shall be permissible.
- (g) All pipework shall be supported and designed to withstand seismic forces as per NZS 4219.

¹¹ M11 Steel pipe: A guide for design and installation. American Water Works Association

5.11.5 Dry-well installations

See **Section 5.10.5 Dry-well installations**.

5.11.6 Electrical specification

The electrical design shall take into account the following:

- (a) The electrical and SCADA specification and standard design shall be obtained from Wellington Water prior to design.
- (b) Pumps over 2 kW shall employ a minimum of a soft starter on each pump capable of handling 8 starts per hour. Variable speed drives are permitted.
- (c) The control switchboard shall be provided with a plug and wiring capable of allowing an emergency generator of a suitable size to power the station to start and maintain the maximum design flow rate.
- (d) The form of connection (plug or tails) must be approved by Wellington Water.

6 WATER SUPPLY SPECIFICATIONS

The following specifications pertain to technical aspects of general water supply construction. These may be superseded by specific specifications issued by Wellington Water for Wellington Water construction contracts. All other construction must comply with the following specifications unless dispensation in accordance with the Dispensation Procedure is given in writing by Wellington Water.

6.1 Hygienic practices and immunisations

All personnel working on the drinking water supply network must follow the Hygiene Code of Practice (WQMG_0001), which is available on the Wellington Water webpage.

Any person, plant or material on a work site will be required to leave the site until hygiene and immunisation requirements of this specification are met.

A high standard of hygiene is to be maintained by all personnel working on the water supply reticulation.

Refer to **Section 4.1.1 Immunisations** for relevant information on immunisations and vaccinations.

6.1.1 Cleanliness

- (a) Measures must be taken to ensure all pipes are clean and to prevent material getting inside the pipe during laying operations.
- (b) Pipes must be inspected immediately prior to laying to ensure cleanliness.
- (c) Outside working hours, the end of the pipe must be kept tightly sealed to prevent ingress by water or trench materials.
- (d) Particular care must be taken where the pipe end could be affected by stormwater flows or groundwater levels under all conditions.
- (e) An antibacterial lubricant suitable for use with drinking water must be used on all gaskets and rubber rings coming into contact with drinking water (see **Section 6.2.1.1 Suitability for contact with drinking water**).

6.1.2 Equipment

The following applies to the hygienic use of equipment:

- (a) All items to be used on the water supply reticulation are required to be disinfected with 100 mg/L chlorine solution and hygienically maintained for work on the water supply reticulation.
- (b) Any tools or clothing used on any work in or on any river, drain, sewer or other non-potable water work shall not be used on water supply work without first being disinfected. This shall also apply to excavator buckets.
- (c) Any vehicle used in water supply work as a service vehicle for making inspections, attending leaks and other call-outs, or making connections, and equipped for the

purpose of being a water service vehicle or carrying a permanent stock of spare fittings, should not be used on any non-potable water work:

- (i) If used on non-potable water work, the vehicle must be fully decontaminated in a manner approved by Wellington Water prior to returning to water supply work.
- (ii) The contractor shall provide a Certificate of Decontamination declaring what measures were taken.
- (iii) The contractor shall impose identical conditions to the above on any subcontractor they employ in the course of the Contract.

6.2 Materials

6.2.1 Materials compliance

The following applies to materials compliance for water supply:

- (a) All materials shall conform to the standard specified. Compliance with the required standards shall be demonstrated by third party certification.
- (b) All materials shall, at Wellington Water's discretion, be subject to test under the appropriate standard. Materials shall also be subject to Wellington Water's approval even though they conform to the appropriate standard specification.
- (c) Current approved products are listed in the Approved Products Register published on Wellington Water's website. Approvals are subject to change. Care shall be taken that the most current version of the Approved Products Register is used.
- (d) Materials that do not comply with the prescribed standards and/or specifications listed shall only be used with the written permission of Wellington Water.

6.2.1.1 Suitability for contact with drinking water

Products and materials must comply with the following:

- (a) Products, and their components, must be third party certified to AS/NZS 4020 to be considered for use in the public network.
- (b) Wellington Water may consider products that are certified compliant with BS 6920 by a third party, or are registered as approved by the:
 - (i) Drinking Water Inspectorate (DWI)
 - (ii) Water Regulation Advisory Scheme (WRAS) or
 - (iii) American National Standards Institute/National Sanitation Foundation standard ANSI/NSF 61.
- (c) Compliance with the organisations listed in **Section 6.2.1.1(b) Suitability for contact with drinking water** does not necessarily mean it is compliant with AS/NZS 4020. ANSI/NSF 61 does not consider taste and odour effects or the potential for materials to promote the growth of microorganisms. BS 6920, which WRAS base their approvals on, does not test for leaching of mutagenic compounds or include testing for metallic products. DWI is the preferred alternative certification to AS/NZS 4020, as this uses BS 6920 test, plus a suite of other tests to ensure products are suitable for use in a public waters supply network.

- (d) When assembling rubber ring joints, a water-based lubricant specifically made for this purpose, which is certified to AS/NZS 4020, shall be used in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. The joint lubricant shall incorporate a bactericide.

6.2.1.2 Existing non-compliant pipes

If, during the course of construction work, a non-compliant pipe material is identified, Wellington Water, or their contracted representative, shall be contacted to gain approval for its renewal. This will include existing copper, PE80b, PE80c, alkathene, PVC and galvanised iron service pipes.

6.2.2 Concrete

See:

- **Section 5.3.1 Cement**
- **Section 5.3.3 Reinforcing steel**
- **Section 5.3.5 Non-structural concrete**
- **Section 5.3.6 Structural concrete**

6.2.3 PVC pipes

The only PVC variant pipes that are permitted for use in the network are PVC-U and modified polyvinyl chloride (PVC-M).

PVC pipes shall not be used in the following conditions:

- (a) Where the pipeline is a pumped rising main.
- (b) Where the pipeline is an above ground pipeline.
- (c) Where lateral spreading is expected to occur.
- (d) Where slope stability issues are expected to occur.
- (e) Where ground liquefaction is expected to occur.
- (f) Where the ground is contaminated by aromatic industrial solvents.

PVC-U and PVC-M pipes shall comply with the following:

- (g) Pipes shall be jointed using EPDM elastomeric sealing rings in a socket spigot push fit arrangement.
- (h) Jointing lubricant that complies with AS/NZS 4020 and comprising water based emulsions and a bactericide shall be used on all joints.
- (i) Bends and tees used with PVC pipe shall be ductile iron and comply with AS/NZS 2280 or ISO 2531.
- (j) Series 1 pipe shall be specified for all new subdivision and renewal projects.
- (k) Series 2 pipe of a similar class as existing may be specified for repairs of an existing Series 2 compatible pipeline.
- (l) Pipes shall be, as a minimum, rated to an operating pressure of 12 bar (PN12) although the pipe rating shall be designed and specified as per the method outlined in the *Regional Standard for Water Services*.

6.2.3.1 PVC-U pipes

PVC-U pipes shall comply with AS/NZS 1477.

6.2.3.2 PVC-M pipes

The following applies to PVC-M pipes:

- (a) PVC-M pipes shall comply with AS/NZS 4765.
- (b) PVC-M pipes shall not be used in areas contaminated with, or may potentially be contaminated with, chemicals, especially organic solvents.

6.2.4 Polyethylene pipes

The following applies to PE pipes:

- (a) PE pipe manufactured with PE 100 material, a minimum of PN 16, SDR11 wall thickness to conform to AS/NZS 4130 and AS/NZS 4131. Metric diameters (Series 1) shall only be used.
- (b) They shall be blue in colour, or black with blue stripes or black walled with blue external "jacket". Black pipes shall be used for any above ground applications.
- (c) For PE pressure pipelines pipe compliance to AS/NZS 4130 shall be demonstrated by providing copies of the batch release test (BRTs) specified in Table A-1 of AS/NZS 4130.
- (d) For PE pressure pipelines material compliance to AS/NZS 4131 shall be demonstrated by providing copies of the BRTs specified in Table A-1 of AS/NZS 4131.
- (e) For PE fittings for pressure pipelines compliance to AS/NZS 4129 shall be demonstrated by providing copies of the BRTs specified in Table A-1 of AS/NZS 4129.
- (f) Laboratories undertaking this testing shall be Third Party Certified to ISO 17025 by an accredited certifying authority.
- (g) PE pipe should not be used where hydrocarbons are detected as it may result in tainting of drinking water or long-term weakening of the pipe and reduction in the factor of safety.
- (h) Any pipe with a surface scoring deeper than 10% shall not be used.

6.2.5 Ductile iron pipes

The following applies to ductile iron pipes:

- (a) Pipelines conforming to AS/NZS 2280 may be used when repairing existing compatible pipelines, for new bulk water pipelines, or on special application to Wellington Water.
- (b) New pipelines, other than those covered in (a) above, shall be laid with ductile iron pipe complying with ISO 2531. Pipes shall be securely wrapped with a polyethylene sleeve with a minimum thickness of 200 microns. The sleeve shall be wrapped with a minimum 48 mm wide PVC, polypropylene or polyethylene tape at 600 mm spacing.
- (c) Additional protection will be specified by Wellington Water for installation in corrosive soils.

- (d) Ductile iron pipe shall not be used in estuarine conditions or in soils with soil resistivity less than 1,000 Ohm-cm (because of corrosion) or where the ground is contaminated by hydrocarbon fuels.
- (e) Allowable ductile iron pipe diameters for the bulk water distribution network are shown in **Table 6-1**.
- (f) Refer to **Section 6.4.7 Ductile iron pipe**.

Table 6-1 – Allowable ductile iron and steel pipe diameters for the bulk water distribution network

Nominal diameter (mm)	Outside diameter (mm)
100	122
150	177
200	232
250	286
300	345
375	426
500	508
600	610
650	667
750	762
900	914
1050	1067
1200	1220
1400	1420

6.2.5.1 ISO 2531 for new pipelines

The following applies to ductile iron pipe ISO 2531 requirements:

- (a) Ductile iron pipe shall comply with ISO 2531 and be of a minimum rating of PN25 (pipe's pressure rating when unrestrained).
- (b) Restraining systems shall be used for all installations. The joint restraint system shall be selected based on the proposed laying environment and will have a minimum pressure rating of 16 bar.
- (c) The pipe exterior shall be zinc coated under an epoxy coat at least 100 microns thick. The internal lining shall be concrete or epoxy coating.
- (d) Ductile iron fittings shall be ISO 2531 and comply with the requirements in **Table 6-2**.

Table 6-2 – Ductile iron pipe ISO 2531 requirements

Item	Requirement
Compliance with manufacturing standard	ISO 2531
ISO 2531 Clause 4.1.4	AS/NZS 4020
ISO 2531 Clause 4.2.2.1	100 mm to 300 mm - 1.5 mm 400 mm to 600 mm - 2.5 mm 700 mm to 1,000 mm - 4.0 mm
ISO 2531 Clause 4.2.4.1	Standard pipe length shall be 5.5 m or 6.0 m
ISO 2531 Clause 4.4.2	Pipes shall be Portland cement mortar lined, or blast furnace slag cement mortar lined
ISO 2531 Clause 4.5.2	Fittings shall be FBE lined
Minimum allowable pressure class	C 40 (4 MPa) – for pipes 100 mm to 300 mm C 30 (3 MPa) – for pipes 350 mm to 600 mm C 25 (2.5 MPa) – for pipes 700 mm to 1,000 mm
Minimum allowable DN	100 mm
Maximum allowable DN	1,000 mm

6.2.5.2 AS/NZS 2280 for repairing bulk water pipelines and existing compatible pipelines

The following applies to ductile iron pipe AS/NZS 2280 requirements:

- For bulk water pipelines, ductile iron pipes shall be cement mortar lined internally and bituminous paint exterior coated conforming to AS/NZS 2280 PN35.
- Ductile iron pipes for reticulation complying with AS/NZS 2280 and rated to a minimum PN20 may be used.
- All socket-spigot DI pipe shall be joined using restraining gaskets to prevent joint pull-out. The proprietary gaskets shall ensure a minimum PN16 is retained by the pipe system and joint.
- Factory applied concrete internal lining in compliance with the above standard, and bitumen external coating is required as a minimum. Approved epoxy linings will be accepted as will zinc and/or epoxy coatings.
- Ductile iron pipes with factory applied protective coatings may be installed without polyethylene sleeving, but it must be demonstrated that the receiving ground conditions do not adversely impact on the durability of the pipe coating and design life of the pipe.

6.2.6 Steel pipes

The following applies to steel pipes:

- Steel pipe shall not be used in estuarine conditions (because of corrosion).
- Steel pipes shall be to NZS 4442 with wall thicknesses to NZS 4442 Table 2, column (b). Notwithstanding the values in column (b):

- (vi) Pipes from 400 mm to 600 mm shall have a minimum wall thickness of 6.4 mm.
- (vii) Pipes larger than 600 mm shall have a wall thickness no less than the outside diameter divided by 95.
- (c) Pipe to AS 1579 of similar dimensions may be considered on special application to Wellington Water.
- (d) Steel pipe shall have a factory applied concrete lining and polyethylene wrapped external coating to the standard set out in NZS 4442. Factory applied epoxy or fusion bonded coatings will also be acceptable provided they are certified as compliant with the requirements of AS/NZS 4020.
- (e) For pipes DN 650 (667 OD) and greater, the pipe shall have hemi-spherical slip in joints to BS 534 to permit welding both internally and externally with a full width fillet weld. The pipe bell shall be supplied with a tapped hole for nitrogen pressure testing of the completed joint.
- (f) For pipes less than 600 mm, the pipes shall be plain ended and joined using full penetration butt weld.
- (g) Welding bands may be required where a butt weld is not practicable.
 - (i) The mating ends of the pipe shall be cut square and any exposed steel coated with a self-priming AS/NZS 4020 approved solvent free steel primer to prevent post installation corrosion.
 - (ii) The joint shall be internally lined with mortar for pipes 600 mm nominal bore and greater.
- (h) Flanged steel pipe is acceptable for all pipe sizes.
- (i) Ferrules shall not be used on steel pipes.
- (j) Allowable steel pipe diameters for the bulk water distribution network are shown in **Table 6-1**.

6.2.7 Copper pipes

Copper pipe shall comply with NZS 3501.

6.2.8 ABS pipes

The following applies to ABS pipes:

- (a) ABS pipes and fittings shall comply with AS/NZS 3518 and dimensions shall be Series 1 (metric).
- (b) Bends and tees shall be factory moulded and not fabricated post-production.
- (c) All connections shall be cold solvent welded.
- (d) ABS pipes will typically only be accepted in smaller pumping stations where ductile iron or steel pipework is impractical. It shall not be used for buried pipe applications.

6.2.9 Stainless steel pipes

The following applies to stainless steel pipes:

- (a) Stainless steel pipes shall not be used in underground applications.

- (b) The following may be used for above ground situations such as pumping stations or valve chambers: 316 or 316L.
- (c) A minimum grade Schedule 40 stainless steel pipe conforming to ASTM A312 shall be used.
- (d) Flanged joints are the preferred method of joining stainless steel pipes.

6.2.10 Manholes

Manholes are designed around the use of standard diameter concrete chamber risers (e.g., 1,500 mm and 2,100 mm) to allow the use of precast concrete top slabs to be used. The following applies to all manholes for water supply:

- (a) The top slabs shall be capable of withstanding HN-HO-72 loadings and a minimum of AS 3996 Class D.
- (b) All joints shall be rendered neat with mortar.
- (c) The manholes shall be designed with a drainage discharge point into the bedding metal of the pipe.
- (d) Stainless steel step irons at 300 mm centres shall be installed.

6.2.10.1 Bulk water pipeline access manholes

The following applies to manholes on bulk mains with 650 mm or larger diameters:

- (a) Pipeline access manholes shall be installed no further apart than 300 m.
- (b) The 600 mm nominal diameter flanged branches shall be welded to the pipeline in accordance with this specification.
- (c) The 600 mm nominal diameter cover plate shall be prepared and coated with 300 microns of Carboguard 690 in two layers or an approved alternative drinking water protective coating.
- (d) A 25 mm stainless steel ball valve shall be fitted to the access chamber cover plates. Before fitting the access chamber cover plate, the faces of the flanges shall be perfectly clean.
- (e) The joint shall be made with a 3 mm thick insertion rubber gasket. The bolts shall be carefully tightened in opposite pairs until the joint gasket is sufficiently compressed between the flanges to ensure water tightness at the pipeline hydraulic test pressure.

6.2.10.2 Manhole covers

The following applies to water supply manhole covers:

- (a) Only approved covers shall be used on public pipelines.
- (b) All covers shall be capable of withstanding HN-HO-72 loadings and comply with a minimum load rating to AS 3996 Class D. Higher loadings may be required depending on the anticipated application (e.g., airports or loading yards).
- (c) General cover specifications are as follows:
 - (i) The top surface of the frame and cover shall be flush.
 - (ii) The cover shall allow a 600 mm diameter minimum clear opening.

- (iii) The cover shall be a minimum 600 mm x 1200 mm opening to allow full body entry and working space and with a maximum lifting weight of 40 kg. Consideration shall be given to the cover design and weight in regards to conditions that enable safe lifting.
- (d) Particular attention is drawn to the need to ensure that the covers shall not rock.

6.2.11 Valves

For gate valves and butterfly valves (see **Standard Detail WS05 – Typical Valve Details**):

- (a) The valve body shall be internally and externally coated with an approved coating conforming to AS/NZS 4158.
- (b) Valves shall be fitted with a key dolly for operation with a standard valve key.
- (c) Valve spindle extensions shall be installed, if required, to bring the top of the square drive to between 150 mm and 450 mm of the ground surface, with a target depth of 200 mm.
- (d) All valves shall include a tag or other means to clearly indicate closing direction.

6.2.11.1 Gate valves

The following applies to gate valves DN 80 mm and greater:

- (a) Gate valves to be used on the network as line, branch or scour valves, DN 80 and above, shall be resilient seated with a ductile iron body. They shall comply with AS/NZS 2638.2 and shall be anti-clockwise closing.
- (b) Flanged valves shall be used for all installations.
- (c) Socket, spigot, shouldered or groove end valves are not permitted for use in the network without special permission. The standard acceptable valves available for use in the network are listed in the Approved Products Register.
- (d) Valves complying with BS 5163.1 may be considered for trunk water supply pipelines.
- (e) For bulk water pipelines, gate valves shall be flanged to AS/NZS 4331.2
- (f) All gate valves shall be a PN16 minimum, unless design conditions require a higher pressure class.
- (g) Valves in buildings shall have hand-wheels.
- (h) Buried valves DN 80 or greater shall be operated by a standard key and bar.
 - (i) Spindle caps shall be a maximum of 450 mm below the finished ground level.
 - (ii) Where unavoidable, extension spindles may be used to meet this requirement where mains are necessarily at depth, but the means of positively fixing the extension to the spindle shall be approved by Wellington Water to ensure a non-friction based fixing system is adopted that is not susceptible to failure over the required design life due to corrosion or wear. Extension spindles shall be one piece, secured to the valve spindle, colour-coded white or red to indicate closing direction and epoxy coated.
- (i) Valves DN 100 and greater shall be flanged both ends.

- (j) On rubber-ring jointed pipelines, including pipelines with restraint gaskets, in-line thrust blocks shall be installed on valves to resist forces due to differential pressures across the valve.
- (k) Valves DN 375 and greater shall incorporate a bypass valve of no less than DN 100.
- (l) Wellington Water may require valve chambers for large diameter valves, especially those with an actuator. Where valve chambers are required, the connection between the valve chamber and the pipeline shall be seismically resilient.
- (m) Hand-wheels, spindle caps and nuts and bolts shall be protected against corrosion and, with the exception of hand-wheels, shall be suitable for buried application.

The following applies to gate valves less than DN 80:

- (n) Gate valves less than DN 80 shall be manufactured to DIN 3552 Part 4 and of ductile iron with a resilient seated gate.

6.2.11.2 Butterfly valves

The following applies to butterfly valves:

- (a) Butterfly valves shall comply with AS 4795.2 and be double flanged, resilient sealed, anti-clockwise closing, with a minimum pressure rating of PN 16 and suitable for bi-directional flow and end-of-line service.
- (b) For pipes larger than 300 mm diameter, the valve seal shall be fixed on the valve.
- (c) Face to face dimensions shall be to AS 4795.2 or ISO 5752.
- (d) Lugged valves complying with AS 4795.1 will also be considered for certain applications where space is a premium, such as manhole applications.
- (e) Semi-lugged or wafer style valves require specific approval for use anywhere in the water supply network and are not typically accepted without good reason.
- (f) Butterfly valves shall have a handwheel and gearbox for valves DN 200 or greater. A position lockable lever is required for all valves smaller than DN 200. Position indication shall be fitted on the butterfly valve.
- (g) Butterfly valves shall be fusion bonded epoxy coated to AS/NZS 4158 and designed for a 50 year service life.

6.2.11.3 Ball valves

Ball valves shall be:

- (a) Typically used for applications up to DN 50.
- (b) Two piece, full bore, lever operated heavy duty stainless steel ball valves with BSP threaded connections, suitable for a working pressure of at least PN 40.

6.2.11.4 Hydrant valves

Hydrants shall:

- (a) Comply with NZS 4522 screw-down type.
- (b) Be clock-wise closing with a non-rising spindle.
- (c) Be bolted onto a ductile iron DN 80 riser or tee branch.

- (d) Be installed with an outlet cap to prevent debris from entering the outlet when not in use.
- (e) Be installed such that the top of the spindle cap is between 125 mm and 300 mm of the underside of the hydrant lid.
- (f) Not have a frost plug.
- (g) Have the following markings:
 - (i) Surface markings shall be as outlined in SNZ PAS 4509 (see **Section 4.11.2.1 Hydrants**).
 - (ii) Blue reflective pavement markers shall be required for all hydrants.
 - (iii) Circles shall be placed around any hydrant that attracts a high risk of being obstructed by a parked vehicle. This typically includes:
 - 1. Hydrants within 2.5 m of a kerb where parallel parking is allowed.
 - 2. Where the centre of the hydrant is within 600 mm of a marked parking bay.
 - 3. Any other area where Wellington Water considers the hydrant to be at risk of being obstructed.

6.2.11.5 Service pipe valves

The following applies to service pipe valves (tobies):

- (a) Service pipe valves (tobies) for residential properties requiring a DN 20 service pipe or less shall be an approved manifold as listed in the Approved Products Register.
 - (i) They shall be housed in an approved surface box (see **Section 6.2.12 Surface box systems for service pipe valves and manifolds** and **Standard Detail WS08 – Typical Domestic Manifold and Water Meter**).
- (b) Service pipes greater than DN 20 shall have a gate valve of the same nominal diameter that meets the requirements of **Section 6.2.11.1 Gate valves**. Only valves listed in the Approved Products Register shall be used in the public network.
- (c) Where a service pipe is replaced, or the existing service valve excavated, and the existing service valve is a 15 mm or 20 mm gate valve, this service valve shall be replaced with a manifold (see **Section 6.2.12 Surface box systems for service pipe valves and manifolds**) except where the valve is exposed (e.g. where the service pipe is laid up the side of a bank).
- (d) See **Section 4.11.2.3 Kerb markings** for information on reinstatement.

6.2.12 Surface box systems for service pipe valves and manifolds

The following applies to all surface box systems for service pipe valves and manifolds:

- (a) The system shall be rated to AS 3996 Class B when located in the berm, footpath or driveway with appropriate concrete surround, and Class D in the carriageway.
- (b) Where a service pipe is replaced, or the existing service valve excavated, see **Section 6.2.11.5 Service pipe valves**.
- (c) Where the surface box system is located in a metalled or asphaltic concrete driveway, and the surface box is high density PE, the surface box shall be set with a

20 MPa concrete surround a minimum 100 mm thick and 150 mm wide. This is to prevent the surface box from being “squeezed” by the weight of the traffic onto the flexible surface. Adequate care must be taken by the installer for the concrete surround not to affect the safe opening and closing of the surface box.

- (d) All surface box systems shall:
 - (i) Use a base to spread vertical loads onto the bedding.
 - (ii) Contain enough metallic material to enable a potentially buried box to be located, using a metal detector, under at least 100 mm of soil.
 - (iii) Be large enough so the service valve or manifold can be centrally located within the plan area of the box, and so that access to the fittings is practicable without excavation.
 - (iv) Be deep enough so the base is at least 20 mm below the service valve or manifold, and that a meter can be installed into the manifold port without adjustment of the box.

6.2.13 Surface box systems for area meters

The following applies to area or district area meter surface box systems:

- (a) Meters shall be housed in an approved system rated to AS 3996 Class D.
- (b) The box shall provide adequate space for removal of the meter, access to the isolation valve and visual inspection of the joints.
- (c) The box shall be able to be drained to natural ground and in a position that is safe for meter readers to read.
- (d) The cover shall be a minimum 600 mm x 1200 mm opening to allow full body entry and working space with a maximum lifting weight of 50kg. Consideration shall be given to the cover design and weight in regards to conditions that enable safe lifting.

6.2.14 Surface box systems for Valve blocks

The following applies to surface box systems for valve block:

- (a) Gate valve blocks and covers shall be an approved system rated to AS 3996 Class D.
- (b) Valves shall have a 150 mm PVC insert pipe extending from below the valve stem gland to just below the valve box lid.
- (c) It shall be installed such that there is no traffic loading onto the PVC pipe and clear access from ground level down to the valve’s spindle cap.

6.2.15 Surface box systems for Hydrant blocks

The following applies to surface box systems for hydrant blocks:

- (a) Hydrant blocks and covers shall be an approved system rated to AS 3996 Class D.
- (b) Hydrant blocks shall be installed as per the requirements of NZS 4522.
- (c) When a hydrant standpipe is installed on the threaded outlet, the standpipe does not contact the hydrant box at any point.

6.2.16 Fittings

6.2.16.1 Mechanical tapping bands

Mechanical tapping bands:

- (a) Shall only be used for customer connections to the reticulation main.
- (b) Shall not be used for rider main connections or the junction of two reticulation pipes.
- (c) Shall be made from LG2 gunmetal, aluminium bronze, stainless steel or fusion bonded epoxy coated ductile iron and shall be of a two part fully encircling design.
- (d) Shall be used to connect up to and including a 32 mm connection on a DN 100 pipe or 40 mm connection on to a DN 150 or DN 200 pipeline.
- (e) Shall be installed with PP or PE insulators where tapping bands are used on ductile iron, cast iron or steel pipelines to protect against corrosion and stray currents. Alternatively, the tapping band shall be fusion bonded epoxy coated.
- (f) If used on PVC pipelines, tapping bands shall be designed such that the fully tightened band will not cause ovalisation of the pipe by more than 3%.
- (g) May have a “mains-cock” installed to aid in commissioning of pipelines. The mains-cock shall be an LG2 gunmetal, bronze ball valve or a screw-type proprietary valve (Talbot) that shall be left in the open position and wrapped with the full Denso system (primer, mastic, petrolatum tape and PVC outer wrap) after commissioning of the main.
- (h) Shall not be used on polyethylene pipes.

6.2.16.2 Electrofusion tapping saddles and branch saddles

Electrofusion tapping saddles and branch saddles shall:

- (a) Comply with AS/NZS 4129.
- (b) Manufactured from PE100 material.
- (c) Have a minimum installed pressure rating of PN16.
- (d) Be installed using a welding clamp to ensure the saddle maintains the recommended welding contact area and pressure during installation.
- (e) Be installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s recommendation, notwithstanding the requirements of PIPA POP001¹².

6.2.16.3 Electrofusion couplers and elbows

Electrofusion couplers and elbows shall:

- (a) Comply with AS/NZS 4129.
- (b) Be manufactured from PE100 material.
- (c) Have a minimum installed pressure rating of PN16.
- (d) Be installed using a quad clamp alignment tool and re-rounding clamp to ensure the alignment of the fitting does not move during installation.

¹² Industry guidelines. *Electrofusion jointing of PE pipes and fittings for pressure applications. Issue 8.0. POP001. Plastics Industry Pipe Association of Australia Limited (PIPA). 2019.*

- (e) Be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation, notwithstanding the requirements of PIPA POP001.

6.2.16.4 Mechanical compression fittings

Mechanical compression fittings:

- (a) For use on polyethylene pipe shall not be used for new pipelines.
- (b) Where permitted in writing, may be used where the pipeline is less than 63 OD. These shall be screw-type compression fittings when used on PE100 pipelines, manufactured from polypropylene and listed in the Approved Products Register. Inserts/pipe stiffeners shall be used.
- (c) Shall comply with AS/NZS 4129 and rated to a working pressure of PN16.
- (d) Large diameter compression couplings may be considered when connecting to an existing pipe where a dry shut-off may not be possible and time is critical.

6.2.16.5 Direct tapping

The following applies to direct tapping:

- (a) Direct tapping using a ferrule is not permitted on any pipe material type.
- (b) All service and fire connections to a water supply main must be made via a proprietary fitting such as a tee, tapping band or electrofusion saddle.
- (c) Steel branches or sockets may be welded onto existing steel pipes to create a suitable connection in-situ.

6.2.16.6 Mechanical couplings

Mechanical couplings:

- (a) Are considered to be a repair fitting; use on new mains is to be minimised as much as practical through the use of socketed joints, welding or fusion jointing. Examples of permitted connection methods between new and existing mains are provided in **Standard Detail WS13 – Examples of Water Main Connections**.
- (b) That are unrestrained (Gibaults) shall comply with AS/NZS 4998 up to 750 mm pipes, or with ANSI/AWWA C219/06 for larger pipelines.
- (c) Shall use nuts, bolts and washers that are either 316 stainless steel or hot dip galvanised. An anti-galling compound shall be used on all stainless-steel threads.
- (d) Shall be wrapped with the full Denso system (primer, mastic, petrolatum tape and PVC outer wrap) when buried or within a buried chamber. Mechanical couplings within pumping stations or other ventilated structures need not be wrapped, but shall have stainless steel nuts, bolts and washers.
- (e) Shall be tightened to the torque specified on the fitting and in the manufacturer's recommended tightening pattern.
- (f) Shall have a minimum pressure rating of PN16 when used with water. A higher-pressure rating may be required where design circumstances dictate.
- (g) Shall not have an internal register, except for mechanical flange adapters which shall have a full circle register.

- (h) That use metal teeth to form a restrained joint shall only be used by special permission. The restrained gasket shall be specifically designed for the pipe material it is mated to and rated to a minimum of PN16 when fully end loaded.

The following also applies to mechanical couplings:

- (i) Where mechanical couplings are joining a PVC pipe to a more rigid pipe (cast-iron, ductile iron or steel pipe), the end ring with the tightening nuts shall be tightening on the rigid pipe. This provides a more even compression and seal. The sealing ring shall be lubricated with a drinking water approved lubricant.
- (j) At locations requiring installation of mechanical joint couplings, pipe ends shall be cut square and, in the case of spirally welded steel pipe, the spiral welds ground smooth for a sufficient distance to allow installation of the coupling.
- (k) For bulk water pipelines, the exposed steel shall be prepared and coated with 300 microns of *Carboguard 690* in two layers or approved alternative drinking water protective coating.

6.2.16.7 Dismantling joints

The following applies to dismantling joints:

- (a) Dismantling joints shall be PN16 rated (as a minimum), ductile iron or steel and coated to AS/NZS 4158 or AS/NZS 3862.
- (b) Stainless steel components will be accepted provided they are electrically insulated from other non-stainless steel components.
- (c) Elastomeric seals shall comply with AS 1646 and all wetted components shall comply with the requirements of AS/NZS 4020.
- (d) All dismantling couplings shall be wrapped with the full Denso system (primer, mastic, petrolatum tape and PVC outer wrap) if buried.

6.2.16.8 Bends and tees

The following applies to bends and tees:

- (a) Bends, tees, tapers, spools and tapped connectors shall be ductile iron fittings manufactured to AS/NZS 2280 and coated to AS/NZS 4158.
- (b) Bends certified to ISO 2531 shall be used on pipelines with a metric outside diameter (Series 1).
- (c) All fittings shall have a minimum pressure rating of PN16 unless the design requires a higher pressure class.
- (d) Flanged or spigot bends, tees and “specials” fabricated from STCL may be permitted where ductile iron fittings are not practicable.
 - (i) These shall be manufactured to the requirements of NZS 4442 for pipe up to DN 450.
 - (ii) For pipes exceeding DN 450, they shall be manufactured in accordance with AWWA Manual M11.¹³

¹³ M11 Steel pipe: A guide for design and installation. American Water Works Association

- (iii) Fabricated steel fittings shall be either polyethylene tape wrapped and concrete lined at the fabricators, or epoxy coated to AS/NZS 3862.
- (e) PVC bends and fabricated or moulded PE tees shall not be permitted.
- (f) Socketed DI fittings used on PVC pipes shall be of a “long socket” pattern and use the minimum depth of engagement as outlined in WSA TN2.¹⁴
- (g) Coatings on DI and STCL fittings shall be free of holidays and rust.
- (h) DI fittings installed in PVC pipelines that result in unbalanced thrust (such as tapers) shall be flanged so that they can be fixed into assemblies that will control the unbalanced thrusts.
- (i) DI fittings installed in PE pipelines shall be flanged.
- (j) All bends and fittings shall be of sufficient length to allow anchorage against natural ground with concrete thrust blocks without encasing the pipe joints in concrete.
- (k) Socket-socket electrofusion bends are permitted to be used on PE pipelines. Bends shall be of the correct material and SDR for the pipeline.
- (l) Post-formed PE bends and mitred PE bends are permitted to be used on PE pipelines.
 - (i) The maximum angle for butt fusion welded bends shall be 12 degrees.
 - (ii) Both post-formed and mitred bends shall be de-rated.
 - (iii) PE bends shall be long-spigot to allow butt fusion welding to the pipe string.

6.2.17 Pressure reducing valves

The following applies to pressure reducing valves (PRV):

- (a) PRVs shall typically be hydraulically operated globe valves of an approved type and model as specified in the Approved Products Register.
- (b) A concept design for a typical PRV installation is available from Wellington Water on request.
- (c) PRVs and all associated fittings shall be PN16 pressure rated.
- (d) They shall be selected to provide a minimum 10 year service life at design flows (average daily peak flow) without requiring replacement of any parts, including seals and diaphragms. The bonnet shall vent into the downstream pipe and not to the atmosphere.
- (e) Noise shall be a consideration and selection shall be carried out to minimise the noise during higher flows. This may require two PRVs in series or parallel to eliminate excessive pressure differential and the associated noise.
- (f) Where a PRV is to be used as the primary source of supply for an area, a low-flow bypass may be required to maintain suitable flow and pressure during low flow periods. This will be ascertained during the design stage to ensure the full range of design flows are achievable through the installation without excessive noise and cavitation, and with an acceptable design life:

¹⁴ WSA-TN2 Guidelines for the use of non-metallic pipes with ductile iron elastomeric joint fittings and spread sheet calculation. Water Services Association of Australia

- (i) PRV sizing shall be designed with a nominal life of 20 years at the design flows before overhaul is required.
- (ii) Design flows shall be 60% of time at min flow, 10% at peak flows and 30% at half peak flow.
- (g) Fire hydrants shall be installed upstream and downstream of the PRV's isolation valves of any PRV that is to be used as a primary supply.
- (h) An approved top-entry strainer shall be installed within the chamber between the upstream isolation valve and the PRV.
- (i) Tappings, ball valves and oil filled pressure gauges with a 100 mm diameter dial face shall be installed immediately upstream and downstream of the PRV. Tappings on the PRV body shall not be used for the purpose of permanent gauges.
- (j) A combination air-valve shall be installed immediately downstream of the PRV installation on pipelines 100 mm and greater.

6.2.17.1 Pressure relief valves

The following applies to pressure relief valves:

- (a) A pressure relief valve shall be installed downstream of the PRV to prevent the downstream network from being over-pressurised due to a fault in the PRV.
- (b) The relief valve shall be sized to carry the full flow at static pressure and shall be located on the main pipe.
- (c) The pressure relief valve discharge shall be piped to the kerb or other point where the discharge will be visible.
- (d) A contact plaque may be required, and supplied for installation, by the Wellington Water.
- (e) The discharge pipe shall be sized appropriately but shall be a minimum of 63 OD PE100.
- (f) It shall be located such that the discharge is channelled safely into the stormwater system without scouring or flooding. The potential for scour of a natural waterbody must comply with permitted activity standard in regional plan rule or consent for discharge will be required under RMA.

6.2.17.2 Chamber

The PRV, bypass PRV, pressure relief valve, strainer and gauges shall be housed in a precast concrete chamber. The chamber shall be:

- (a) Located out of the carriageway where practicable and provide safe operator access.
- (b) Drained, either to the ground where the chamber floor is above the water table, or to a kerb or open channel. The drain shall be designed such that stormwater cannot back-up through the drain into the chamber.
- (c) Installed with an approved cover. An AS 3996 Class D rated frame and cover is required in the carriageway with a minimum 600 mm diameter clear opening. In the berm, an AS 3996 square Class C frame and cover is required with minimum dimensions of 600 mm x 900 mm.

6.2.18 Non-return valves

The following applies to non-return valves:

- (a) Non-return valves used in the network shall comply with AS 4794.
- (b) Resilient seated swing-check valves shall be used in the general reticulation.
- (c) Non-slam wafer-check valves shall be used in water supply pumping stations.

6.2.19 Air valves

Air valves shall:

- (a) Comply with AS 4956.
- (b) Be either an air release, air/vacuum or combination type valve. The valve shall be selected by the designer to admit or expel air to prevent negative pressures and remove air from the system during adverse operating conditions. Combination valves are typically preferred on mains.
- (c) Be of a make and model approved by Wellington Water.
- (d) Be installed with an approved stainless steel ball valve for installation less than 50 mm, or an approved gate valve for larger installations, providing a means to isolate the valve for maintenance without affecting the operation of the main. Where the valve cannot be safely operated from the surface, a mitred gear box on a gate valve or butterfly valve shall be used to allow safe operation from the surface.
- (e) Contain a small and a large orifice. The air valve float shall not prematurely seal the orifice at very high air discharge rates.
- (f) Have flange joints encapsulated in the full Denso system (primer, mastic, petrolatum tape and PVC outer wrap).

6.2.19.1 Chamber

The air valve shall be housed in a precast concrete chamber that:

- (a) Allows the valve to be safely isolated and maintained without excavation.
- (b) Is located out of the carriageway where practicable, and provides safe operator access.
- (c) Is positioned such that it is clear of potential ponding and areas with secondary overland flow to prevent the chamber filling with water during rainfall events.
- (d) Has a drain; either to the ground where the chamber floor is above the water table, or to a kerb or open channel. The drain shall be located at the lowest point of the chamber and designed such that stormwater cannot back-up through the drain into the chamber.
- (e) Has an approved cover on it. An AS 3996 Class D rated frame and cover is required in the carriageway with a minimum 600 mm diameter clear opening.
- (f) Has an air vent that shall allow the exit of the air valve exhaust without pressurising the chamber:
 - (i) The vent shall allow the entry of air into the chamber without drawing water or debris into the chamber.

- (ii) The vent shall be epoxy coated steel or ductile iron and shall not present a trip or vehicle hazard.
- (iii) Holes drilled into the manhole lid or a horizontal grate is not an acceptable air vent.
- (iv) The vent shall be sized to limit air velocity.

6.2.20 Water meters

Advice note: Please ask Wellington Water for latest advice on commercial and residential metering.

Only brands listed in the Approved Products Register may be used within the public water supply system. Notwithstanding this, the following specification shall apply.

Meters shall:

- (a) Have a current MID Pattern Approval Certificate to OIML-R49.
- (b) Be suitable for outdoor and in-ground installation and maintain a service life of at least 20 years.
- (c) Not have a pressure rating less than PN16.
- (d) Be installed such that:
 - (i) There is an isolation valve upstream of the meter and strainer.
 - (ii) There is a backflow prevention device or isolation valve downstream of the meter (for commercial properties only).
 - (iii) It is in an approved underground box or externally accessed cabinet.

Where meters are mechanical, they shall:

- (e) Have a design to allow the register to be clearly read throughout the life of the meter. This shall be either:
 - (i) A sealed protected totalizer liquid filled register, or
 - (ii) A copper and mineral glass dry register.
- (f) Be installed such that there is a proprietary or approved strainer upstream of any mechanical meter.

6.2.20.1 Meter accuracy

Water meter performance (Q1, Q2, Q3 and Q4) shall be greater or equal to the performance calculated using the Q3 (permanent flow) and Q3/Q1 ratio, as listed in **Table 6-3**.

- (a) Meter body lengths shall conform to those outlined in **Table 6-3**, which are the common lengths used in New Zealand¹⁵.
- (b) Meters DN 50 or less may be BSP threaded.
- (c) Meters DN 50 or greater shall be flanged as per **Section 6.4.6.8 Flanged connections**.
- (d) DN 50 meters may be either flanged or BSP threaded.

¹⁵ Water Meter Code of Practice 2003, WaterNZ

Table 6-3 – Minimum performance specification for meters

Nominal bore (mm)	Q3 (m ³ /hr)	Meter body length (mm)	Minimum Q3/Q1 ratio	Typ. No. dwellings served*
15	2.5	134	R160	1
Manifold (40mm port)	2.5	n/a	R160	1 to 2
20	4	165	R160	3 to 5
25	6.3	260	R160	6 to 10
32	10	260	R160	11 to 22
40	16	300	R160	23 to 45
50	25	n/a	R315	By design
65	40	n/a	R400	By design
80	63	n/a	R400	By design
100	100	n/a	R400	By design
150	250	n/a	R630	By design

* Based on calculations for multiple residential dwellings from NZS 3500.1 where Q3 is not exceeded by the maximum probable simultaneous flow. This is conservative and is suitable for dense housing complexes or apartment buildings.

6.2.20.2 Magnetic flow meters

The following applies to magnetic flow meters:

- (a) Magnetic flow meters shall be installed in chambers with suitable access for inspection and maintenance.
- (b) Meters shall be supported as per the manufacturer's recommendations.
- (c) Appropriate straight lengths of pipe are required both upstream and downstream of the meter. A standard guideline is 5 diameters length upstream and 3 diameters length downstream.
- (d) Transmitter heads shall be remotely mounted in an above ground cabinet with safe pedestrian access for reading.
- (e) Chambers shall be provided with drains, except in areas with a high water table.

6.2.20.3 Meters on a fire service or sprinkler connection

See **Section 6.11 Fire Services**.

6.2.20.4 Detector check meters

See **Section 6.2.21.2 Double check detector assembly**.

6.2.21 Backflow preventers

The follow applies to backflow preventers:

- (a) Backflow preventers shall be certified to comply with AS/NZS 2845.1. Approved backflow preventers are listed within the Approved Products Register.
- (b) The installation of backflow prevention devices shall be in accordance with AS/NZS 3500.1.
- (c) Installation of backflow prevention devices must be compliant with the relevant Standard Details in **Appendix 1**, unless prior approval is obtained from Wellington Water.

6.2.21.1 Reduced pressure zone device

The following applies to reduced pressure zone (RPZ) devices:

- (a) RPZ devices shall be installed above ground and with:
 - (i) A strainer immediately upstream of the device.
 - (ii) An isolation valve both upstream and downstream of the RPZ and strainer.
 - (iii) A suitable cabinet/cage around the device that will allow inspection and free drainage of the device.
- (b) RPZ devices can eject some water from the port so drainage of the discharge is to be considered within the context of the environment it is installed in.
- (c) The area around the RPZ shall be paved, or finished in concrete so that vegetation cannot grow up under the RPZ device.
- (d) The clearance between the paved surface and the discharge point of the RPZ shall not be less than 300 mm.
- (e) A meter may be installed between the strainer and the RPZ provided suitable diameters are provided upstream and downstream of the meter.

6.2.21.2 Double check detector assembly

The following applies to double check detector assemblies:

- (a) Double check detector assemblies are required on all fire-services and other non-revenue connections.
- (b) The double check detector assembly shall comply with AS/NZS 2845.1, which requires a bypass line, water meter and secondary double check valve.
- (c) The meter on the bypass shall comply with the requirements of **Section 6.2.20 Water meters**.

6.3 Pipe laying

6.3.1 Minimum cover to pipeline

Minimum cover to pipes shall be as set out in **Table 6-4**.

Table 6-4 – Minimum cover to pipelines (in metres)

Nominal bore (mm)	Carriageway / Motor crossing	Footpath	Berm
20 to 25	0.75	0.75	0.60
40 to 50	0.75	0.75	0.60
100 to 200	0.75	0.75	0.75
300 to 600	0.90*	0.90*	0.90*
≥700	1.00**	1.00**	1.00**

* May be less than 0.90 m for sections not exceeding 60 m in length and not less than 750 mm minimum depth of cover

** May be less than 1 m for sections not exceeding 60 m in length and not less than 750 mm minimum depth of cover

6.3.2 Maximum cover to pipeline

Maximum cover to pipes shall be as set out in **Table 6-5**.

Table 6-5 – Maximum cover to pipelines

Nominal bore (mm)	Maximum cover (m)
20 to 25	0.80
40 to 50	1.20
≥100	2.50*

* May exceed 2.5 m for sections not exceeding 30 m in length and not greater than 4.0 m maximum depth of cover

It shall be acceptable to exceed this depth of cover where the pipe is installed in a duct or a tunnel and can be withdrawn for repair. This would normally be achieved by horizontal directional drilling or micro tunnelling and would be a specific design approved by Wellington Water.

6.3.3 Minimum clearances from other utilities

The following applies to minimum water pipeline clearances from other utilities:

- Pipes shall be laid parallel to other services whenever practicable.
- Where a pipe crosses another utility, it shall be as close to perpendicular as practicable, and shall maintain minimum horizontal and vertical clearances equal to the greater of the minimum clearances outlined by the other utility and shown in **Table 6-6**.

Table 6-6 – Minimum water main clearances from utilities

Utility	Minimum horiz. Clearance (mm)	Minimum horiz. Clearance (mm)	Min. vertical clearance (mm) when crossing
	Non-bulk main	Bulk main	All
Other water mains	300	600	150
Gas mains	300	600	150
Telecommunications conduits and cables	300	600	150
Electricity conduits and cables	500	1000	225
Stormwater drains	300	300	150
Wastewater mains ⁺	1000*	1000*	200 ⁺

⁺ Wastewater mains should always be below watermains to reduce the risk of cross-contamination as a result of a watermain failure.

* or 1000 mm radial distance from a watermain (i.e. horizontal can reduce when vertical increases).

Note: Clearances are between utility pipe/conduit barrels

6.3.4 Pipe handling

The following applies to handling pipes:

- Pipes and fittings shall be transported and handled in a manner that is safe and meets industry guidelines and the manufacturer's instructions.
- Pipes shall be secure during transport and shall not be allowed to roll or skid during transit.
- Sockets shall be clear of adjacent pipes and other sockets and shall be protected from damage.
- Pipes shall not be tipped or dropped onto the ground from the transport. Lifting equipment shall be used to unload pipes from the transport. Spreader bars shall be used for long (12 m) lengths of PVC and PE pipes to avoid undue bending stress on the pipe
- In storage, pipes shall be stacked on dunnage, on flat ground and with supports. Scaloped dunnage is preferred to minimise rolling potential. The ends of the pipe shall be sealed to ensure rubbish and animals cannot enter the pipe whilst in storage.
- Where PVC and PE pipes are to be stored long-term (longer than 3 months), they shall be protected from heat and ultra-violet radiation with covers or warehousing.
- Chains shall not be used to lift pipes.

6.3.5 Allowable grade

On bulk water pipelines the minimum fall gradient is 0.2%, and the minimum rising gradient is 0.1% relative to the flow direction.

6.3.6 Thrust and anchor blocks

Thrust blocks restrain the pipe by transferring pipe-thrust to the immediately adjacent undisturbed natural ground. Anchor blocks use their weight to hold the pipe in position.

Thrust and anchor blocks:

- (a) Are required even where restrained joint pipes and fittings are used. This is to protect against future repairs and/or cut ins which may compromise the integrity of the restrained system.
- (b) Shall be constructed from 20 MPa concrete at 28 days. The bearing face shall be poured against firm, clear and undisturbed natural ground. Flanges and sockets are to be kept clear of concrete and under no circumstances shall a joint be embedded in the thrust block. The concrete shall have a contact area with the pipe of at least a third of the pipes outside circumference. A polythene sheet shall be set between the concrete and the fitting.
- (c) Pipes larger than DN 300 require specific design including but not limited to reinforcement and concrete strengths due to the large loads.
- (d) Shall not be placed under working or test load for at least 3 days after pouring.

6.3.6.1 Thrust blocks

Thrust blocks (see **Standard Detail WS03 – Typical Thrust Block Details**):

- (a) Shall not be installed on PE pressure pipelines at changes of direction, tees and changes in pipe diameter unless specifically required by the designer.
- (b) Thrust blocks are required at on PE pipelines any point where the PE pipeline terminates, or is connected to a different pipe material or is connected to a structure that is not able to provide the required thrust restraint. In the case of connection to a structure, the thrust restraint may be provided by the structure.
- (c) Thrust blocks that are loaded during pressure testing shall be sized to resist forces when the pipe is pressurised to full test pressure.
- (d) Thrust blocks that are not loaded during pressure testing (for example thrust blocks on cut-in specials) shall be sized to resist forces when the pipe is pressurised to maximum operating pressure.

6.3.6.2 Anchor blocks

The following applies to anchor blocks:

- (a) Irrespective of whether an anchor can be constructed, vertical changes in direction shall, wherever possible, be designed so that they are thrust neutral in the vertical direction (see **Standard Detail WS04 – Typical Anchor Block Details**).
- (b) Where straps are used to secure the pipe or bend to a block, 6 mm insertion rubber shall be placed along the full area of contact between the pipe wall and the strap. Insertion rubber shall be placed along the full contact area with the concrete block also.
- (c) Straps and anchors shall be 316 stainless steel.

6.3.6.3 Precast thrust and anchor blocks

The following applies to precast thrust and anchor blocks:

- (a) Precast blocks may be used to allow faster working reinstatement of the pipeline for pipes DN 200 and smaller.
- (b) Precast blocks shall conform with the minimum standards outlined in this specification.
- (c) Where there is a gap between the block and the natural ground, the gap may be filled with compacted lean-mix to ensure tight contact between the soil, block and fitting. The gap between the precast block and the natural ground shall be no greater than 75 mm.
- (d) mm insertion rubber shall be placed between the precast block and the fitting.
- (e) Precast blocks are not permitted for pipe diameters larger than DN 200.

6.3.6.4 Allowable bearing pressure

The following is allowable bearing pressure:

- (a) The bearing pressure of the soil shall be checked to ensure it has the minimum required bearing strength as specified in the design.
- (b) A Scala Penetrometer maybe used to determine the in-situ bearing strength of the soil.
- (c) As a guide for pipe DN 300 and smaller:
 - (i) The **vertical** bearing pressure of the soil can be taken as:
 - 1. 65 kPa for 2 blows per 100 mm
 - 2. 100 kPa for 3 blows per 100 mm
 - 3. 150 kPa for 5 blows per 100 mm and
 - 4. 200 kPa for 7 blows per 100 mm.
 - (ii) The **horizontal** bearing pressure shall be less than this and, in the absence of better geotechnical information, shall be taken as half the estimated vertical bearing pressure.
- (d) For pipes larger than DN 300, suitable geotechnical advice shall be sought to calculate allowable bearing pressure and the size of the thrust block.

6.3.7 Fittings

All fittings shall be swabbed with a 50 mg/L chlorine solution and maintained as hygienically clean until installed within the pipeline. Only the surfaces which will come into contact with drinking water need to be swabbed and maintained.

Magnetic flowmeters shall not be treated topically as the chlorine solution can damage the meter's lining.

6.3.8 Warning tape / tracer wire

The following applies to warning tape and tracer wire:

- (a) Warning tape shall be placed 300 mm above all bulk, trunk, principal and rider main pipes and 100 mm above service pipes.
- (b) The warning tape shall be:
 - (i) Blue polyethylene or polypropylene
 - (ii) A minimum of 100 mm wide and
 - (iii) Detectable by either stainless steel wire or aluminium laminate.
- (c) Where a pipe is installed by means of pipe bursting, a 2.5 mm compacted 316 stainless steel wire rope is to be co-drawn with the pipe as a tracer wire (see **Section 4.15 Pipe-bursting**).
- (d) Where a pipe is installed by means of directional drilling, slip lining or impact mole:
 - (i) A 4 mm² copper polythene sleeved tracer wire is to be co-drawn with the pipe.
 - (ii) Warning tape and wires shall be electrically continuous and joints must be adequately overlapped and jointed to ensure no degradation of the electrical continuity over the life of the asset.
 - (iii) This may require the use of electrical connectors.
- (e) Where warning tape/wire is damaged due to a pipe repair or new connection, the warning tape/wire is to be fixed to maintain electrical continuity along the length of the pipe.
- (f) Tape shall continue through service valve, hydrant and valve enclosures whilst maintaining tape conductivity (see **Standard Detail WS05 – Typical valve details**).
- (g) Warning tape for a pipe is to be connected to warning tape above adjoining service connections and other pipelines and fittings such as service valves, hydrants and valves.
- (h) The tape/wire shall be wrapped around the fitting with the tail end protruding above the fitting to just below any spindle cap or hand-wheel to avoid any fouling or obstruction to valve key operation.

6.3.9 Cathodic protection

- (a) Electrical contact between buried metallic structures and the metallic pipe and pipe fittings shall be prevented.
- (b) Insulating flanged joints shall be installed at flanges connecting above ground installations and magnetic flow meters.
- (c) All non-welded joints in metallic pipe, including flanged connections, shall be joint bonded to provide electrical continuity. Joint bonds shall be insulated 16 mm² copper wire loops, sealed to prevent the ingress of moisture. Buried joint bonds shall be duplicated at each joint (i.e., two bonds per joint).
- (d) The overall length of the conductor shall permit sufficient flexibility across the joint to prevent tensile stress on the bond cable. Cable to fitting connections shall be a dedicated corrosion-free stud or earthing boss welded to the pipe and liberally

coated with Denso. The mechanical strength of a bond shall be sufficient to withstand the effects of backfilling and maintenance.

- (e) Bare copper bond straps, conductivity screws and conductivity wedges shall not be used to provide electrical conductivity.
- (f) Where electrical continuity bond cables are installed, the contractor shall prove the electrical continuity of the pipeline before and after backfilling.
- (g) A multimeter continuity test or resistance test shall be carried out between each nut and an unprotected part of the flange on the opposite flange of the joint.
- (i) A resistance value above 100k ohms is considered satisfactory for these flange joints.

6.4 Pipe jointing

The following applies to pipe jointing:

- (a) PVC pipes shall be rubber-ring jointed with a proprietary in-joint rubber ring.
- (b) Ductile iron pipes may be rubber-ring jointed or flanged.
- (c) Steel pipes shall be welded as per the requirements of this specification.
- (d) To achieve the majority of the minor changes of grade and/or direction without installing fabricated bends, pipes shall be laid on smooth transition curves using the allowable deflection in the pipe joint.
 - (i) Allowable deflection is 3 degrees in ductile iron pipes with rubber ring joints.
 - (ii) Allowable deflection is 2 degrees in ductile iron pipes with Tyton-loc rings.
- (e) Polyethylene pipes shall be butt fusion or electrofusion welded. Approved compression fittings may be used on 63 OD pipes and smaller. Axially restrained mechanical couplings may be used on PE pipes for maintenance repairs, or when connecting to an existing in-service PE pipe during cut-ins.
- (f) In liquefiable land refer to the *Regional Standard for Water Services* for seismic design.

6.4.1 Rubber-ring joint

The following applies to rubber-ring jointing:

- (a) Pipes may be joined to other pipe bends and tees using rubber-ring moulded socket-spigot joints. Elastomeric rings shall comply with AS 1646 and shall typically be EPDM. Other compounds such as NBR may be used where appropriate, such as where hydrocarbons are present or are potentially present in the soil.
- (b) Witness marks shall be employed to ensure the appropriate insertion depth is obtained.
- (c) Spigots are to be chamfered as per manufacturers recommendations. This is typically a 15-degree angle with the pipe axis and from a depth of half the pipe wall thickness.
- (d) An AS/NZS 4020 approved lubricant shall be liberally applied to each socket and spigot prior to insertion to ensure the seal is not unseated or "pinched". Lubricant shall only be placed on the sealing face of the ring and care shall be taken to ensure

lubricant is not placed on the underside of the ring. Lubricant shall also be used on factory fitted sealing rings.

6.4.1.1 Restraining gaskets

Restraining gaskets shall:

- (a) Only be used on PN35 ductile iron pipelines. Only specific brands shall be approved. These brands are listed in the Approved Products Register.
- (b) Be lubricated in the same style as non-restraining gaskets.
- (c) Not be reused if removed from an in-situ installation.

6.4.2 Mechanical compression fittings

6.4.2.1 Mechanical fittings for PE pipe

The following applies to PE mechanical compression fittings:

- (a) All compression fittings shall be certified to AS/NZS 4129 and only those listed within the Approved Products Register shall be permitted for use in the water supply network.
- (b) Proprietary stainless steel or plastic inserts/pipe stiffeners shall be used with all mechanical compression fittings used on polyethylene pipes.
- (c) The pipe spigot shall be clean, free of scores, burrs, scratches and solvents and shall be inserted into the fitting square until the pipe reaches refusal.
- (d) Fittings shall be hand tightened for fittings less than DN 40, or using a proprietary wrench as specified by the manufacturer for fittings DN 40 and greater. Do not over-tighten as this can damage the grip ring or the fittings threads resulting in pull-out.
- (e) PE mechanical compression fittings shall only be used for the repair of PE pipelines up to 630 mm OD.
- (f) Approved, axially restrained, mechanical fittings may also be used for the connection of new PE watermain to existing PE watermain.

6.4.2.2 Mechanical fittings for other pipes

The following applies to mechanical compression fittings for other pipes:

- (a) All compression fittings shall be certified to AS/NZS 4998 and only those listed within the Approved Products Register shall be permitted for use in the water supply network, and only when socket, flanged, threaded or welded joints cannot practically be employed.
- (b) The pipe spigot shall cut square, clean, free of scores, burrs and scratches.
- (c) The pipe ends shall be marked with witness marks to ensure the correct end-gap is centred in the coupler before the fasteners are tightened.

6.4.3 Polyethylene butt fusion and electrofusion welding

The following applies to PE butt fusion and electrofusion welding (see also **Section 4.19 Polyethylene welding**).

- (a) Where polyethylene pipes are connected to existing or new metal fittings, electrofusion transition couplings shall be used to join the two materials.
- (b) Where PE water mains are connected to existing, in-service, PE water mains less than 315 mm OD, electrofusion couplers are preferred when site conditions allow. For larger mains or where the conditions for installation of electrofusion couplers (see **Section 4.19 Polyethylene welding**) cannot be met, connections shall be made using an approved PE mechanical compression fitting.

6.4.4 Flanges

6.4.4.1 General reticulation pipes

The following applies to flanges for general reticulation pipes:

- (a) All flanges used in the water supply network shall be AS/NZS 4087 or BS EN 1092 rated to PN16. The following patterns are permitted:
 - (i) Figure B5 for ductile iron fittings and
 - (ii) Figure B7 for steel fittings.
- (b) These patterns have an equivalent drilling pattern to BS10 Table D.
- (c) 3 mm fibre reinforced EPDM gaskets shall be used with all flanges.
- (d) Bolts, washers and nuts to be used on all flanges shall be hot dipped galvanized or 316 stainless steel. An anti-galling compound shall be used with all stainless-steel threads to ensure threads do not seize.
- (e) All flanges that will be buried, or have the potential to be buried, shall be coated and wrapped in the full Denso system (primer, mastic, petrolatum tape and PVC outer wrap). Flanges that are in a dry, ventilated environment, such as a pumping station, do not need to be wrapped.
- (f) Prior to mating, the flange face shall be clean of dust, solvents, oil, grease and other materials. The flange faces shall be mated and the bolts tightened in a sequence of opposing pairs, with pairs generally perpendicular to each other. A torque wrench shall be used where specified by the manufacturer.
- (g) Washers shall be used under all bolt heads and nuts.

6.4.4.2 PE stub flanges

The following applies to PE stub flanges:

- (a) Flanged connections from a PE pipe to a flanged connection shall be made using butt fusion welded stub-flange or electrofusion stub flange.
- (b) An adapter flange will be required for pipe above DN 180.
- (c) Fittings such as "Slimline" stub flanges that reduce the wall thickness or reduce the pipe internal diameter will normally not be allowed.

6.4.4.3 Bulk water pipelines, and trunk pipelines and general reticulation greater than DN 500

The following applies to bulk water pipelines, and trunk pipelines and general reticulation pipelines greater than DN 500:

- (a) Flanges shall comply with AS/NZS 4331.1 PN16 unless otherwise specified.
- (b) AS/NZS 4331.1 PN25 flanges shall be used where design pressures dictate.
- (c) Flanges on steel pipes shall be flat faced, slip-on style flanges.
- (d) All blank flanges and flanges on access manholes shall be coated with 300 microns of Carboguard 690 or an alternative approved in writing by Wellington Water. The sealing faces of the flanges shall remain uncoated.

6.4.5 Copper pipe

The following applies to copper pipes:

- (a) Copper pipes shall be joined to adjacent copper pipe by brazing.
- (b) Where a connection to fittings or other material types is required, gunmetal crox nuts and nipples onto a BSP threaded transition piece is the approved method of connection.
- (c) Jumper cables shall be used when working on existing copper services. This is to protect the pipe fitter from potential electric currents from properties earthed to the pipe.

6.4.6 Steel pipe welding

6.4.6.1 Welding specification procedure

All welding shall be carried out to the requirements of BS 2971 or ASME B31.4.

A Welding Procedure Specification (WPS) shall be provided to Wellington Water representative for approval at least 5 days prior to beginning work. The WPS shall include:

- (a) Type of welds required
- (b) Welders and their qualifications
- (c) Equipment to be used and
- (d) Methodology to be used.

6.4.6.2 Qualifications

All welding is to be carried out by a welder certified to AS/NZS 2980:2007. The certificate of any welder employed on the project shall be produced on request.

6.4.6.3 Safety

The following applies to steel pipe welding safety:

- (a) Appropriate practices are described in AS/NZS 2865 and WTIA TN7¹⁶ adopted by Worksafe Mahi Haumaru Aotearoa.
- (b) Ventilation shall be appropriately addressed in Health and Safety procedures for both internal and external welding operations.

6.4.6.4 Welding considerations

The following considerations shall be accommodated in all WPS and welding operations:

- (a) All welding shall be carried out with the pipework in a clean and dry condition. Where the work consists of pipework leak repair or a cut-in, every effort shall be made to obtain a watertight isolation.
- (b) Windbreaks and shelters shall be provided to protect the weld area from inclement weather.
- (c) Butt welds must be full penetration.
- (d) Fillet welds shall have equal leg length and have a throat of 0.7 x leg length plus 0 to 20% leg length and shall be mitred or slightly.
- (e) A distance of at least 300 mm or 30 degrees of the pipe diameter shall be used to stagger any longitudinal welded joints between adjacent pipe sections.
- (f) All circumferential lap welds in pipelines of DN 600 or greater shall be seal welded internally and externally, with the lining repaired post-welding and testing.
- (g) The out-of-roundness of the pipe shall not exceed the lesser of 10% of pipe diameter or 10 mm.
- (h) Welds joining temporary attachments to the pipeline must be to the same quality as the final weld is required. Temporary attachments must be removed carefully and the area visually inspected for any deleterious surface flaws
- (i) All welding consumables shall be stored to the manufacturer's instructions and shall meet the recommendations given in ASME B31.4.

6.4.6.5 Welding preparation

The following applies to the preparation of steel pipe for welding:

- (a) The weld preparation shall be clean, dry and free from grease, oxides, paint, dirt, slag or any foreign material that will affect the welding process and quality.
- (b) All pipe materials 15 mm either side of the weld preparation shall be clean and rust free prior to any welding.
- (c) All cut material shall be free of burrs.
- (d) Surfaces to be welded shall be free of laminations, gouge marks, slag and any harmful condition that may affect the quality requirements of the deposited weld metal.

¹⁶ *Health and Safety in Welding – Technical Note 7 (TN7). Welding Technical Institute of Australia (WTIA). 2006. See <https://worksafe.govt.nz/topic-and-industry/welding/health-safety-in-welding/>*

- (e) Prior to commencing any welding, defects to the following maximum depths shall be removed by grinding to produce a cavity with a weld to depth ratio of not less than 4 to 1:
 - (i) For manual welding (MMAW, GTAW): 2 mm
 - (ii) For automatic welding (MMAW, GTAW): 1 mm, and
 - (iii) Imperfection exceeding the above limits shall be weld repaired using an approved repair welding procedure.
- (f) Pipes shall be held in the correct alignment and position using an alignment device until welding has been completed.
- (g) Packers shall not be used when using welding bands. Gaps are to be filled using a 'buttering' method.
- (h) Where unintentional excessive gaps occur due to ovality, buttering of the pipe with a layer no more than 10 mm thick of weld metal may be permitted to achieve the required root gap.
 - (i) Buttering is not to be used as a general fabrication technique.
 - (ii) All deposited weld metal shall be dressed smooth to meet the shape required before completing the weld.
 - (iii) Buttered weld metal shall not protrude into the pipeline bore.

6.4.6.6 Butt welds and branch connection welds

The following applies to butt welds and branch connection welds:

- (a) The root gap shall not be greater than 3 mm.
- (b) The bevel angle shall be prepared within -0 to +5 degrees of the tolerance specified in the welding procedure.
- (c) For single sided welding, the tolerance on the root gap shall not be -1.5 mm to +3.0 mm of the tolerance specified in the WPS.
- (d) The gap between the mating surfaces of fillet welds shall not exceed 2.0 mm.
- (e) Butt weld cap reinforcement shall not exceed 3 mm with a slope not exceeding a ratio of 4:1.
- (f) The weld penetration into the pipe bore shall be even and not exceed 3 mm.
- (g) The weld toes of butt and fillet welds shall blend smoothly with the parent material.

6.4.6.7 Tack welds

The following applies to tack welds:

- (a) Tack welds must be to the same quality and workmanship as the final weld and strong enough to withstand the fabrication welding stresses.
- (b) They should have a length of not less than the lesser of 40 mm or four times the thickness of the material.
- (c) Tack welds that are not removed must be fully melted and incorporated into the completed weld.
- (d) The size of tack welds shall be proportioned to withstand the load requirements and restraint of the weld joint being made.

- (e) All cracked tack welds shall be completely removed before final welding commences.
- (f) Tack welds that form part of the completed welds shall be ground at the start and the finish and completely fused into the final weld. The suitability of the technique shall be demonstrated to the satisfaction of Wellington Water or their delegated representative.

6.4.6.8 Flanged connections

The following applies to flanged connections:

- (a) Flanges shall be welded to the pipe, square to the pipe end.
- (b) The flange shall not be a tight fit on the pipe. However, the clearance between the outside diameter of the pipe and the bore of the flange shall not exceed 3 mm at any point, and the sum of the clearance on any diameter shall not exceed 5 mm during welding.
- (c) Flanges shall be welded on both sides.
- (d) See **Section 6.4.6.12 Repairs to concrete lining**.

6.4.6.9 Workmanship

The following applies to the workmanship of steel pipe welding:

- (a) For double sided full penetration butt welds, the second side shall be cleaned to sound metal prior to depositing the second side runs. Should carbon arc air gouging be used, all carbon and other residue shall be completely removed by grinding or other approved mechanical means. Only qualified welders competent in gouging techniques shall be employed.
- (b) All welds shall blend smoothly with the parent material and have a consistent profile.
- (c) The use of backing bars requires the prior written approval of Wellington Water.
- (d) The width of individual submerged arc weld beads shall not exceed seven times the consumable wire diameter.
- (e) Peening of the final pass is not permitted.

6.4.6.10 Welding interruptions

The following applies interruptions to the welding process:

- (a) Wherever possible, welding shall be a continuous operation.
- (b) Welding shall not be discontinued before at least the root run and the hot pass are complete.
- (c) If welding must be interrupted, the weld area shall be covered with a heat blanket to permit slow cooling.
- (d) Before resumption of welding, on welds cooled to ambient temperature, the area shall be inspected visually for the presence of cracks. Where cracks are suspected, the weld shall be inspected by magnetic particle or dye penetrant examination by qualified specialist in non-destructive testing to determine acceptability.
- (e) Following an interruption in welding, any required preheat shall be restored to the value indicated in the WPS before resumption of welding.

6.4.6.11 Testing and inspection

The following applies to testing and inspection of steel pipe welding:

- (a) Following completion of joint welding and prior to the protective coatings and linings being applied, all welds shall be visually inspected.
- (b) The weld metal as deposited shall meet the requirements of AS/NZS 2980:2007.
- (c) No melting of the corners shall be allowed to occur to such an extent as to reduce the throat thickness of the weld.
- (d) The weld metal shall be properly fused with the parent metal without undercutting or overlapping at the toes of the weld. Slight, intermittent occurrences may be permitted provided that the undercut or overlap does not form a sharp notch. The stop and start of each run of weld shall merge smoothly and shall show no pronounced hump or crater in the weld.
- (e) All double lap welds of hemi-spherical joints shall be pressure tested. Nitrogen shall be introduced into the annular cavity between the welds, through tapped holes to a pressure of 1,000 kPa within the joint.
 - (i) Oxygen or acetylene shall not be used for this test.
 - (ii) The source of pressure shall be removed and the pressure in the joint monitored for 10 minutes using a suitably calibrated gauge.
 - (iii) If the pressure in the annular cavity drops, both the welds shall be checked for leaks by applying a film of soap solution.
 - (iv) Detected leaks shall be marked and repaired by grinding and re-welding and the joint retested.
 - (v) The soap solution shall be washed off prior to any remedial work and at the completion of the inspection.
- (f) Test results and any rework involved to complete a successful joint test, shall be recorded. A copy of this record shall be provided to Wellington Water.
- (g) Wellington Water may require a specialist welding consultant to carry out further non-destructive testing. If defects exceed the acceptable limits, the defects shall be repaired and the welds retested.

6.4.6.12 Repairs to concrete lining

Welded pipe joints, bends and reducers shall be concrete lined by the hand application of an epoxy bonding agent and mortar as specified below.

- (a) The bare steel between the ends of the pipe interior lining shall be cleaned of rust and other contaminants by wire brushing. At the time of application of the epoxy bonding coat the steel surface shall be free from all foreign substances liable to initiate rusting or liable to impair the bond between the pipe surface and the bonding coat.
- (b) A bonding primer shall be used for large areas of pipe lining repair including welding bands, slip-in joints. The steel pipe surface shall be coated with Nitobond EP or a similar product approved in writing by Wellington Water. The coating shall be sufficiently mixed in accordance with the manufacturer's specification, and in sufficient batched lots to complete the bond priming of the bare steel.

- (c) The concrete lining shall be repaired to the same thickness as the adjacent factory lining.
- (d) Concrete lining must be reinstated up to the pipe end at flange joints and pipe ends.
- (e) The existing concrete lining adjacent to the repair shall be cut back to sound material, with the cut face at right angles to the lining surface.
- (f) The surface of the cured bond primer shall be scarified to improve adhesion, and a pre-mixed cement mortar with polymer fibres shall be applied to complete the lining repair. The mortar shall be Renderoc HB70 or a similar product approved in writing by Wellington Water, and shall be hand applied in such a manner to produce a tight, well compacted pipe lining, with the surface trowelled smooth to conform to the minimum mortar thickness.
- (g) Small areas may be repaired using a Wellington Water approved AS/NZS 4020 compliant epoxy mortar such as Emaco S88C or Humebond when applied to the manufacturer's recommendations. Renderoc HB70 mortar or similar product approved in writing by Wellington Water can be used without bonding primer where there is only a thin strip of lining to repair such as at the end of pipe at flanges and couplings.
- (h) The mortar lining, when completed, shall be well finished with no evidence of laitance and surface irregularities to give a smooth, true, dense surface, entirely continuous with the factory applied pipe lining. Where irregularities are identified, the lining shall be cut back and relined.
- (i) Concrete lining that has not adhered to the steel surface shall be replaced. Lack of adhesion shall be identified by tapping the surface with a hammer and listening for a distinct hollow sound.

6.4.6.13 Repairs to external coatings

Any damaged **polyethylene wrapped** external coating on steel pipe shall be repaired in the following sequence:

- (a) Cut away any loose coating and thoroughly clean the damaged area.
- (b) Thoroughly wire brush the area.
- (c) Apply primer as per manufacturer's instructions, overlapping the undamaged area by 100 mm.
- (d) Apply a double layer of polyethylene tape starting 150 mm beyond the damaged area and 50 mm clear of the primer, wrapping in a spiral form similar to the existing coating. Ensure joints overlap by 25%. A second layer of outer wrapping shall be applied for added protection. Wrapping shall be applied in accordance with the tape manufacturer's recommendations.
- (e) Alternatively, heat shrinkable sleeves may be used as described below.

Heat shrink sleeves shall be used to protect slip-in welded joints, welding bands and welded mitre joints less than 15 degrees. The following applies to heat shrink sleeves:

- (f) Heat shrink sleeves shall be adhesive bonded wraparound shrink sleeves lined with a thick aggressive hydrophobic adhesive.

- (g) The overlap patch is coated with a high softening point hot melt adhesive that bonds to the sleeve to protect the overlap from being peeled back while in service.
- (h) The sleeve width shall be 450 mm.
- (i) The correct temperature of the closure patch during application shall be shown with thermochromic paint.
- (j) The sleeves shall be *Raychem* wraparound heat shrink sleeves, *UBE* shrinkable sleeves, or equivalent as approved in writing by Wellington Water.
- (k) Be installed within two hours after a successful weld test. The following sequence shall be followed for applying heat shrink sleeves, although the manufacturer's instructions are to be strictly adhered to:
 - (i) After welding, the weld area shall be power wire brushed to bright metal. The pipe coating shall be cleaned by brushing to 100 mm back from the edge of the proposed sleeve position to remove dirt.
 - (ii) The area to be sleeved shall be evenly preheated to the manufacturer's recommended requirements. The sleeve shall overlap undamaged coating by a minimum of 80 mm.
 - (iii) The sleeve shall be positioned and heat applied as recommended by the manufacturer.

6.4.7 Ductile iron pipe

The following applies to joints in ductile iron pipe:

- (a) Ductile iron pipe jointing shall follow the joint manufacturer's specification.
- (b) If repairs are needed to sleeving, it shall be repaired using tape for holes or tears smaller than the width of the tape. Sleeving shall be repaired using a patch of sleeving sealed with either tape or strap and buckle for larger holes or tears.

6.4.8 Cold solvent cement welds

The following applies to cold solvent cement welds:

- (a) Only ABS pipes shall be jointed using cold solvent cement welds. ABS pipe shall only be welded to other ABS pipes and ABS fittings.
- (b) The pipe shall be cut square, chamfered and free of burrs. Mating surfaces shall be abraded with emery tape.
- (c) All mating surfaces shall be wiped and cleaned with a methyl ethyl ketone (MEK) solvent to ensure all water, dust, dirt, oil, grease and solvents are removed prior to applying a proprietary ABS solvent cement. Thinners shall not be used on the solvent cement or MEK.
- (d) Solvent cement shall be applied as per manufacturer's recommendations. This may require multiple coats on larger pipe diameters. The spigot and socket shall then be immediately joined and axial pressure sustained for the appropriate welding period. Pipe sizes greater than DN 150 require a mechanical means of applying the sustained axial pressure such as a lever winch and straps or similar.
- (e) Excess solvent cement at the join shall be cleaned up immediately.

6.5 Pressure testing of pipelines

Prior to commissioning of a pipeline, the pipeline and associated valves and fittings shall be pressure tested:

- (a) Long pipelines shall be divided into smaller sections for testing. Test sections shall not exceed 400 m unless approved by Wellington Water.
- (b) Long steel pipelines with slip-in welded joints can be pressure tested in one length.
- (c) All tests shall be carried out in the presence of Wellington Water who will sign the appropriate documentation provided by the developer to verify acceptability of the test results.
- (d) A minimum of 48 hours of notice is required to be given to Wellington Water prior to the test being carried out.
- (e) The developer shall provide all equipment and materials needed to carry out the test.
- (f) The developer is required to have met the following requirements prior to pipe testing and Wellington Water arriving on site:
 - (i) All trenches excavated and pipes laid.
 - (ii) All lines thoroughly flushed and all residual debris cleaned out.
 - (iii) All fittings and connections (except to the live network) installed prior to pressure test.
 - (iv) Pipe anchored securely.
 - (v) Pre-test soaking completed.
- (g) All air must be released from the pipeline during the filling operation. After all air has been released the pressure in the pipeline shall be allowed to build up to normal working pressure.
- (h) The new pipeline shall be left to stand at this pressure for at least 24 hours prior to the pressure test.
- (i) The test design must address potential health and safety risks of pipe fitting failure during filling, pre-test soaking and during the pressure test.

6.5.1 Testing of steel, ductile iron, and PVC pipes

Steel, DI and PVC pipelines shall be tested in accordance with the constant pressure (water loss) method as specified in AS/NZS 2566.2 and Appendix M4. Test duration shall follow **Table 6-7**.

Table 6-7 – Pipeline test durations for the constant pressure (water loss) method

Pipeline Nominal Diameter	Test Duration h (hours)
100 mm to 200 mm	1 h
200 mm to 600 mm	2 h
600 mm and above	3 h

The specified test pressure, measured at the lowest point in the pipeline, shall be:

- (a) 1.25 x the working pressure of the pipeline with a minimum test pressure of 1,200 kPa for PN12 PVC pipe.
- (b) 1.25 x the working pressure of the pipeline with a minimum test pressure of 1,600 kPa for PN15 PVC pipe.
- (c) 1.5 x the working pressure of the pipeline with a minimum test pressure of 1,200 kPa for DI and steel pipe.

6.5.2 Testing of polyethylene pipes

PE pipes shall be tested by either the pressure rebound method for pipes that meet the criteria in **Table 6-8** or the pressure decay method for pipes that don't meet **Table 6-8**. Use of the decay method for pipes smaller than 250 mm requires the written approval of Wellington Water.

6.5.2.1 Pressure rebound method

The pressure rebound method shall be used to test short sections of small pipe. This test method shall be limited to the pipe sizes and lengths in **Table 6-8**.

Table 6-8 – Pipe sizes and lengths suitable for pressure rebound method

Pipe size	Maximum allowable test length
63 mm	400 m
125 mm	350 m
180 mm	300 m
250 mm	250 m

The test shall not be used to test pipes larger than that listed in **Table 6-8**.

The PE pipeline shall be tested in accordance with pressure rebound as specified in AS/NZS 2566.2 and Appendix M7 except that:

- (a) Specified test pressure (STP) for PE100 SDR11 (PN16) pipe shall be 1,700 kPa – when measured at the lowest point in the pipeline section.
- (b) STP for PE100 SDR13.6 (PN12) pipe shall be 1,500 kPa – when measured at the lowest point in the pipeline section.
- (c) The pressure drop shall be 30% of STP.
- (d) The main test phase shall be 90 minutes.
- (e) The pressure shall not drop at any time during the 90 minutes.

6.5.2.2 Pressure decay method

The PE pipeline shall be tested in accordance with pressure decay as specified in AS/NZS 2566.2 and Appendix M6. The STP shall be:

- (a) For PE100 SDR11 (PN16) pipe shall be 1,700 kPa – when measured at the lowest point in the pipeline section.

- (b) STP for PE100 SDR13.6 (PN12) pipe shall be 1,500 kPa – when measured at the lowest point in the pipeline section.
- (c) The loading time t_L shall be not less than 50 minutes.

6.6 Pipe repairs

6.6.1 AC pipe failures

The following applies to the failure and repair of an AC pipe:

- (a) The failure of a section of an AC pipeline shall result in the entire section of pipe between existing pipe joints being removed and replaced with a suitably rated length of approved PVC pipe.
- (b) The PVC pipe shall be joined to the existing AC pipe with mechanical couplings at either end.
- (c) Under no circumstances shall the AC pipe section be locally cut out around the point of failure and replaced, as the integrity of the remaining section of pipe is likely to be compromised by both the failure and initial aged condition.
- (d) The AC pipe shall be bagged as per **Section 4.4 Working with asbestos cement pipes**.

6.6.2 PVC pipelines

The following applies to the failure and repair of PVC pipe:

- (a) For PVC-U and PVC-O pipeline failures, the entire section of pipeline shall be removed and replaced with PVC-U pipe of the same or greater pressure rating. Jointing shall be achieved with mechanical couplings.
- (b) PVC-M pipelines may be repaired by cutting out the failed section 300 mm either side of the failure, and at least 1 metre in length in total, and replacing with a suitable length of PVC-M pipe of the same pressure rating and joined with a mechanical coupling. If the failure is within 1 metre of a joint, the repair shall extend to, and include the joint.
- (c) Where the failure is due to a leaking fitting, such as a tapping band, then a repair clamp is permitted to be used to make the repair.

6.6.3 Ductile iron and cast iron pipe failures

The following applies to the failure and repair of ductile and cast iron pipe:

- (a) Failures due to pin holes can be repaired with a blank tapping band or a repair clamp.
- (b) Cast-iron failures can be repaired using a section of ductile iron pipe and unrestrained mechanical couplings. Longitudinal splits require the entire pipe section to be replaced. Circular fractures can be repaired by either a repair clamp or by removing a section of pipe and replacing with a section of ductile iron pipe and joined with mechanical couplings.
- (c) Ductile iron pipe failures should be repaired with a section of ductile iron pipe and restrained mechanical couplings. The plastic PE overwrap will also require reinstatement once the pipeline itself has been satisfactorily repaired.

- (d) All couplings, repair clamps and tapping bands shall be suitably protected from corrosion by applying the full Denso system (primer, mastic, petrolatum tape and PVC outer wrap).

6.6.4 Steel pipe failures

The following applies to the failure and repair of steel pipe:

- (a) Failures due to pin holes can be repaired with a blank tapping band or a repair clamp. Alternatively, a patch can be welded over the hole once all external coating has been removed.
- (b) Larger failures will require the damaged section to be removed. Where the steel pipe section is in a continuously welded pipeline, the replacement section will need to be of the same diameter and joined to the existing pipe with butt welds and or welding bands. If unrestrained mechanical couplings are used, then tie-bolts shall be specifically designed and incorporated into the repair.
- (c) Where the failure is not in a continuously welded pipeline, then the pipe can be joined using unrestrained mechanical couplings.
- (d) All repairs shall be protected from corrosion using a suitable coating method such as heat-shrink sleeves, polyethylene tape wrap or the full Denso system (primer, mastic, petrolatum tape and PVC outer wrap).

6.6.5 Polyethylene pipe failures

The following applies to the failure and repair of PE pipe:

- (a) Where possible, polyethylene pipe failures shall be repaired using electrofusion couplings and PE pipe of the same compound and diameter.
- (b) Sufficient length of pipe either side of the repair shall be exposed to allow flexing of the pipe to maintain alignment across the electrofusion coupler.
- (c) Electrofusion repair couplers shall be slip-on couplers.
- (d) Electrofusion couplers shall NOT be used to repair the pipe where:
 - (i) The peel depth is less than the depth of scoring present on the pipe wall exceeds the depth of peel required.
 - (ii) The depth of indentation of the pipe wall by bedding chip exceeds the depth of peel required.
 - (iii) A drip-tight shut cannot be achieved.
 - (iv) Moisture lining the pipe wall cannot be controlled and removed.
 - (v) Adverse weather conditions.
 - (vi) Wet and muddy trench conditions.
- (e) Care shall be taken to ensure suitable welding conditions are present before repairing the pipe.
- (f) An electrofusion weld shall not be pressurised until the weld has reached ambient temperature. Typically, a period equivalent to twice the cool time shall elapse AFTER cool time is complete, and before the main is pressurised.

- (g) Where electrofusion welding is not practicable due to in-situ conditions, approved mechanical couplings using grip-rings designed for PE pipe may be used. These shall be used with appropriate stainless steel pipe inserts. Where an electrofusion coupling or saddle has failed, the section with the faulty weld shall be removed and replaced with new PE pipe of the same compound and SDR.

6.7 Tapping of mains under pressure

The following applies to tapping mains under pressure:

- (a) Under pressure tapping into a water main may be made using suitably designed equipment.
- (b) Tapping saddles with built-in self-tapping connections are permitted.
- (c) Tapping drills shall be either a twist drill for metallic pipes (20 mm to 32 mm connections) or a coupon retaining type for non-metallic pipes.
- (d) Specialist equipment used for tapping large diameter connections shall be approved on a case by case basis. These shall retain the coupon after drilling for removal.
- (e) Live tapping shall be carried out through a ball or gate valve (mains cock).
- (f) After connecting the service pipe, the valve shall be secured in the open position by wrapping with petrolatum tape prior to backfilling.

6.8 Water supply shutdowns (cut-ins)

Wellington Water's Shutdown Request process (available on Wellington Water's webpage) is also relevant to stormwater and wastewater shutdowns.

The following applies to temporary water supply shutdown (cut-ins):

- (a) Temporary interruptions to the water supply network shall only be carried out in accordance with Wellington Water's Shutdown Request process (available on the Wellington Water webpage), including:
 - (i) A Shutdown Request (available on Wellington Water's website) shall be submitted to Wellington Water for approval.
 - (ii) All personnel carrying out shutdowns of the water supply must be under the supervision of a water qualified person on site at all times (Level 4 Water Reticulation) and must follow the Water NZ "Good Practice Guide – Hygiene Practices to prevent Water Supply Contamination".
 - (iii) The shutdown plan shall use the template for water supply network shutdowns (available on the Wellington Water website).
- (b) A shutdown plan must be submitted to Wellington Water at least five working days prior to the shutdown.
- (c) Planned interruptions to normal water supply services shall, where possible, not be carried out during peak demand periods. The peak periods are:
 - (i) 6am to 9am on any day
 - (ii) 5pm to 9pm on any day and
 - (iii) 7am to 11am Saturday, Sunday and public holidays.

- (d) Where possible, shutdown shall be planned such that it does not last longer than 4 hours.
- (e) Part 2 Section 25(A) of the Water Services Act 2021 requires approval from Taumata Arowai for any planned restriction or interruption of the provision of drinking water by a network supplier or a bulk supplier that is expected to exceed 8 hours.
- (f) Notifications to affected residents and businesses shall be carried out in accordance with Wellington Water's Shutdown Request process.

6.8.1 Critical and key account customers

The following applies to water supply shutdown and critical and key account customers:

- (a) Critical and key account users include dialysis patients, hospitals, clinics, schools and educational facilities, and all non-residential customers.
 - (i) The person managing the shutdown shall contact Wellington Water (Customer Hub) to check for any dialysis patients within the planned shutdown area.
 - (ii) Critical and key account users shall be notified verbally as well as in writing.
 - (iii) A suitable time for the shutdown shall be negotiated with businesses where water is critical to the business (dialysis patient, schools, bakeries etc), or an alternative supply organised.

6.8.2 Trial shutdown

Trial shut downs shall be carried out in accordance with Wellington Water's Shutdown Request process.

6.8.3 Reactive shutdown

The following applies to emergency and unplanned shutdowns:

- (a) Emergency and unplanned shutdowns include reactive repairs to bursts, emergency situations, significant and major leaks and other situations which require an immediate isolation of the network to prevent further damage or risk to public health.
- (b) Only Wellington Water Customer Operations Group (COG) shall carry out reactive shutdowns.
- (c) In addition to following the Wellington Water Shutdown Request process, reactive shutdowns shall follow the Wellington Water COG Standard Operating Procedures (SOP).
- (d) Affected customers shall be personally notified prior to the water being shut-off. Where it is not practical to notify customers individually, the use of a clear and concise message broadcast over a vehicle mounted public address system may be used. This message shall be broadcast along the full length of all affected streets.
- (e) Alternative supplies shall be arranged for critical and key account users where practicable.

6.8.3.1 Emergency shutdown during planned construction works

Where the water supply network is inadvertently damaged during planned construction works, the contractor undertaking the works shall notify the Wellington Water Customer

Operations Group (COG) Operational Planning Engineer, and the Wellington Water Customer Hub. The Wellington Water COG shall undertake a reactive shutdown and carry out any required repairs.

6.8.4 Temporary supplies

Any shutdown that requires a temporary supply into the network (such as trailer mounted temporary PRV, hydrant feed, tanker supplies, temporary pipes etc.) shall be classified as a Level 2 shutdown, as defined in the Wellington Water Shutdown Request process, and follow the appropriate processes. Alternate supplies may require hydraulic calculations and trialling to confirm they are suitable.

6.9 Manholes

The following applies to manhole design:

- (a) Manholes shall be designed to withstand HN-HO-72 loadings as a minimum, or greater in areas where additional loading is anticipated, such as airports or loading yards.
- (b) Risers shall typically be precast reinforced concrete units complying with AS/NZS 4058 as a minimum for manufacturing. The manufacturer is to certify the riser design is suitable for the design loading.

6.9.1 Manhole construction

The following applies to manhole construction:

- (a) The diameter of cast-in-situ bases of precast manholes shall be at least 300 mm plus the outside diameter of the manhole and shall be at least 150 mm thick.
- (b) Manholes with a precast base shall be placed on a wet concrete bed or on 150 mm of bedding material.
- (c) Precast manhole bases shall be used for all manholes constructed below the water-table or sea level.
- (d) Manholes shall have the minimum practical number of risers. For the majority of manholes, only one riser will be necessary.
 - (i) If more than one riser is used, a layer of mortar or an appropriate epoxy shall be placed on the joint before positioning the next riser.
 - (ii) Proprietary rubber rings or butyl mastic strips shall also be used to seal between riser sections. Rubber rings shall be appropriately lubed and set before jointing.
 - (iii) Similarly, a layer of mortar shall be placed on the top of the top riser before placing the manhole roof.
 - (iv) Epoxy **shall not** be used between the lid and the riser in case the lid needs to be removed in the future.

6.9.1.1 Manhole design against liquefaction

See Section 5.7.1.1 Manhole design against liquefaction.

6.9.2 Manhole rungs

See **Section 5.7.3 Manhole rungs**.

6.9.3 Manhole lid construction

See **Section 5.7.10 Manhole lid construction**.

6.9.4 Hinged manhole covers

Where hinged manhole covers are installed in the carriageway, covers shall be oriented such that the hinge is oriented towards oncoming traffic.

6.9.5 Manhole safety grilles

See **Section 5.7.4 Manhole safety grilles**.

6.10 Connections to the main

The following applies to main connections:

- (a) Any service pipe or fire service connection to a main, excluding a junction with another rider main or principal main, shall comply with this section.
- (b) Pipes shall comply with the permitted types in **Section 6.2 Materials**.
- (c) Tapped connections through the pipe wall shall be the greater of 500 mm, or 5 times the diameter of the principal main, from any other connection, pipe joint or fitting.
- (d) It is important that the swarf from any tapping activity is removed from the pipe before commissioning.
- (e) Tapped clamps shall only be used to repair a main where a ferrule has blown out or similar.
- (f) All connections shall be installed with warning tape as per **Section 6.3.8 Warning tape / tracer wire**.
- (g) Ductile iron tee sections or tapped connectors shall be used on:
 - (i) Connections 40 mm or greater on 100 mm principal mains and
 - (ii) Connections 50 mm or greater on principal mains 150 mm and greater.

6.10.1 Connections to the bulk water pipeline

The connections to existing in-service bulk water pipelines will be carried out by Wellington Water.

6.10.2 Service connections

Connections to the mains shall be made with:

- (a) Tapping bands as per **Section 6.2.16.1 Mechanical tapping bands**.
- (b) Electrofusion saddles as per **Section 6.2.16.2 Electrofusion tapping saddles**.
- (c) Tee sections as per **Section 6.2.16.8 Bends and tees**.
- (d) Tapped connectors as per **Section 6.2.16.8 Bends and tees**.

6.10.2.1 Existing galvanised iron service pipes

Existing galvanised service iron pipes shall be replaced where practicable. Where renewal is not practicably imminent, connections to the existing galvanised iron pipe shall be made using compression fittings designed specifically for this purpose.

6.11 Fire Services

The following applies to fire services:

- (a) Branches off a principal main for a dedicated fire service supplying a building or complex shall be either concrete lined steel, concrete lined ductile iron or PE100 materials compliant with this specification.
 - (i) The fire service branch shall be buried when in road reserve and shall be constructed in compliance with this specification up to the fire service valve (point of supply).
 - (ii) PE100 shall only be used where:
 - 1. The principal main it connects to is also PE100.
 - 2. The fire service branch does not require the installation of bends between the principal main and the fire service valve.
 - 3. A minimum depth of cover equivalent to that required for a principal main is maintained between the principal main and the fire service valve.
- (b) Fire service layouts shall comply with the requirements of NZS 4541 and NZS 4517.
- (c) The fire service valve shall be located in the berm or footpath where possible, at least 500mm from the boundary.
- (d) The fire service valve cover shall be clearly marked with the letters FS and painted green.
- (e) Mechanical meters are not permitted on fire/sprinkler services for non-residential installations that are greater than 50 mm in diameter. Where a meter is required, a magnetic meter shall be installed.

6.12 Disinfection

6.12.1 New or lined pipelines

Prior to the commissioning of any pipeline, the pipeline and associated valves and fittings shall be disinfected and bacteriologically tested to eliminate risks to the public.

6.12.1.1 Chlorination

The following applies to disinfecting new or relined pipelines:

- (a) The pipeline shall be thoroughly flushed with drinking water to clear any debris.
- (b) It shall be completely filled with water with a consistent level of chlorine between 20 and 30 ppm (mg/L).
- (c) All hydrants and valves shall be operated to ensure all surfaces make contact with the highly chlorinated water.

- (d) The pipeline shall be left to sit for 24 hours and the level of residual chlorine measured at three locations along the pipeline.
- (e) The pipeline will be sufficiently chlorinated if the chlorine is 10 ppm or greater at all sample points.
- (f) Prior to completion of the pipeline end connections, the highly chlorinated water shall be flushed from the pipe and replaced with drinking water.
 - (i) The flushed water may be discharged to the nearest convenient stormwater system if the water is dechlorinated using sodium thiosulphate and the remaining residual chlorine concentration meets the permitted activity standard in the regional plan.
 - (ii) If the flushed water is to be discharged to the wastewater system, written approval is needed from Wellington Water, which may include the need to consider trade waste bylaws and the rate of discharge so as not to overload the sewer pipes or any downstream wastewater pumping stations.
 - (iii) An air gap must be maintained at the point of discharge.

6.12.1.2 Bacteriological testing

After disinfection and flushing, and prior to commissioning, the pipeline shall be tested to ensure disinfection was successful.

- (a) A technician from a Wellington Water approved testing laboratory shall take samples over the full length of the pipe.
- (b) If possible, two samples shall be taken over the first 100 m of the pipeline, and an additional sample from locations approximately every 100 m thereafter.
- (c) A minimum of two samples is required for any pipeline.
- (d) The samples shall be tested for residual chlorine levels and *E.coli*.
- (e) The pipeline shall be deemed acceptable for commissioning in accordance with the water quality clearance requirements in the WQMG_0001 *Hygiene Code of Practice*, which require residual chlorine to be ≥ 0.2 mg/L and < 1 mg/L and *E. coli* to be < 1 per 100mL.
- (f) If a pipeline fails the bacteriological tests, or if it is contaminated after testing, the pipeline shall be disinfected again, and bacteriological testing repeated prior to placing the pipeline into service.

6.12.2 Repairs

Repairs to pipelines that are in service shall be cleaned and disinfected in the following way:

- (a) All fittings and pipes shall be sprayed and swabbed with a super-chlorinated solution (50 ppm residual chlorine) and protected from contamination.
- (b) The internal lining of the open ends of pipelines shall be sprayed and swabbed with the super-chlorinated solution. Care shall be taken to ensure water from the trench does not enter the pipeline.
- (c) After the repair is made, and where practicable, the repaired pipe shall be flushed such that drinking water is drawn both ways through the repair location.

6.12.3 Reservoirs

Please note that these sections on reservoirs are currently under review and the most up-to-date guidance must be sought from Wellington Water.

6.12.3.1 Chlorination

Where it is necessary to chlorinate an existing reservoir to improve the level of free available chlorine, the following specification shall be followed:

- (a) The standard chemicals used for chlorine dosing of drinking water reservoirs are calcium hypochlorite in the form of HTH granules and sodium hypochlorite in the form of a solution.
 - (i) Calcium hypochlorite (HTH) typically has an available chlorine level of between 60% and 65%.
 - (ii) Sodium hypochlorite (SHS) typically has an available chlorine level of 15%.
 - (iii) The level of available chlorine shall be checked prior to calculation for both HTH and SHS.
- (b) A Ct = 7200mg/Lmin shall be achieved to provide effective chlorination of reservoirs.
- (c) The use of other chemicals for the dosing of reservoirs is not permitted without the approval of Wellington Water.

6.12.3.2 Chlorine dosage

The following applies to the chlorine dosage for reservoirs:

- (a) Dosing of reservoirs is generally carried out to between 0.1 ppm and 0.3 ppm depending on the severity of the contamination and sensitivity of the consumers supplied. This has been found to be effective for treating low levels of bacterial contamination. Dosage levels are to be specified by Wellington Water.
- (b) Once the required dosage has been verified, the amount of chlorine to be added to the reservoir must be determined. This can be done by physically measuring the depth of water within the reservoir to be dosed and calculating the volume by multiplying the depth measured by the reservoir floor area. Reservoir levels and storage volumes can also be obtained for most reservoir sites directly from the Wellington Water's SCADA system.
- (c) Once the required dosage and volume of water are known, the amount of HTH or SHS can be calculated using the following formula:

$$HTH(g)orSHS(L) = \frac{Vol(m^3) \times req.dosage(ppm) \times 100}{AvailableCl(\%)}$$

Available Cl for HTH = 65%

Available Cl for SHS = 15%

- (d) Where a chlorine residual is or may be present prior to chlorinating the reservoir, a chlorine residual test shall be carried out on the reservoir water to determine the available chlorine already present. This must be allowed for when calculating the amount of chlorine to be added to ensure the correct dosage is achieved.

- (e) Measurement of the quantity of HTH or SHS can be by weight or volume. Measurement by volume is generally more convenient and should be carried out using a measuring cylinder graduated to 20 ml.
- (i) 100 g of HTH will measure 90 ml. For smaller quantities 1 teaspoon of HTH is 5 g by weight.

6.12.3.3 Dosing procedure

The following applies to the dosing procedure for reservoirs:

- (a) Water shall be fed into the reservoir through either manual operation of the pumps or other means of inflow control (e.g., control valve) prior to the addition of any chlorine into the reservoirs.
- (b) This is arranged through the maintenance contractor and may involve liaison with the Wellington Water bulk water supply operators for those reservoirs supplied from the bulk water supply system.
- (c) Where mixing of chlorine is to occur within the reservoir, the quantity of chlorine shall be determined and introduced into the reservoir in 33% increments as the reservoir fills, to enable mixing. Concentrations will be added evenly from both hatches in a method to avoid overconcentration, which may damage internal metalwork.
- (d) Regular water samples shall be taken from the reservoir outlet sampling tap and within the reticulation system over a 24 hour period to ensure satisfactory dispersion of the chlorine has been achieved.

6.12.3.4 Communication

The following applies to communication of cleaning and disinfection of reservoirs:

- (a) Co-ordination with the Wellington Water bulk water operators may be required with regards to filling the reservoir if the reservoir is directly supplied from the bulk supply network.
- (b) It is important to maintain communications with the drinking water assessor (Regional Public Health) throughout the process.
- (c) Any anomalies in the commissioning process or sample results should be conveyed to the drinking water assessor for consideration of its significance.
- (d) The disinfection procedure requires the handling of chemicals, and all staff handling the products should be appropriately equipped and trained in the safe handling and use of the chemicals.

6.12.3.5 Disinfection equipment

The following applies to disinfection of reservoir equipment:

- (a) All equipment should be disinfected using a 50 mg/L chlorine solution.
- (b) This includes all equipment to be taken into the reservoir and all clothing that will be in contact with the interior such as boots and gloves.

- (c) A boot wash should be present at the hatch so footwear can be cleaned prior to entry.
- (d) All brushes, shovels, hoses, machinery etc should be disinfected.
- (e) Reservoirs are a confined space and petrol driven water blasters should not be used inside the reservoir without proper precaution.

6.12.3.6 Washdown

The following applies to the washdown of reservoirs:

- (a) The walls, floor, ceiling and columns should all be scrubbed with a 50 mg/L (min) chlorine solution and hard bristled brushes.
- (b) Care should be taken not to damage any internal seals and water blasting should be considered with care.
- (c) Once the reservoir has been washed down; all equipment shall be evacuated and a pre-filling inspection carried out by the Wellington Water to ensure all areas have been suitably cleaned and all material has been removed to Wellington Water's satisfaction.
- (d) The reservoir shall not be filled until Wellington Water is satisfied with the results of the wash down and has issued clearance.

6.12.3.7 De-Chlorination - filling and dosing

- (a) The following applies to filling and dosing reservoirs:
- (b) Once clearance has been received, the reservoir can be filled by opening the inlet valve (if the reservoir is designed with a top entry filling arrangement) or by water entering the reservoir via a hose through the hatch to maintain an air-gap.
- (c) The reservoir should be filled to the overflow level.
- (d) The reservoir is required to have a final free available chlorine concentration of at least 10 mg/L post-filling. This can be achieved through the use of a continuous dosing plant or by regular introduction of disinfectant solution as the reservoir fills.
- (e) Any disinfectant introduced should be in a dilute solution form (i.e., do not introduce dry form HTH granules directly).
- (f) Some mixing of the reservoir is likely to be required, and this can be achieved using a suitably disinfected powered mixer.
- (g) Dosing should be calculated at:

$$HTH(g) = \frac{Vol(m^3) \times req.dosage(ppm) \times 100}{AvailableCl(\%)}$$

Where:

Vol	is the volume of water in the reservoir in m ³
HTH	(High Test Hypochlorite) is Calcium Hypochlorite dry granules. This can be replaced with Sodium Hypochlorite liquid (mL)

Req. dosage	is the target chlorine residual, typically around 0.3 ppm (mg/L) for reservoirs in normal operation
AvailableCL	is the available chlorine in the additive, either HTH (typically ~65%) or Sodium Hypochlorite (typically ~15%)

6.12.3.8 Sampling

The following applies to chlorine sampling in a reservoir:

- (a) The chlorine residual of the tank should be tested 48 hours after filling to ensure suitable levels have been maintained.
- (b) The chlorine residual should be at least 10 mg/L.
 - (i) If the sample results drop below 10 mg/L, it is indicative of some form of contamination and the water quality should be considered compromised.
 - (ii) The reservoir should be drained as per **Section 6.12.3.9 Draining the reservoir**, and thoroughly investigated to locate the source of the contamination.
 - (iii) The contamination may be due to animal or vegetable matter in the reservoir or a residual construction chemical depleting the chlorine. Once the source is identified, the disinfection procedure can be repeated from the washdown stage.
- (c) Alternatively, the chlorine residual could be increased back above 10 mg/L by introducing additional disinfectant and monitoring for an additional 24 hours.

6.12.3.9 Draining the reservoir

The following applies to draining a reservoir after disinfection:

- (a) If the residual chlorine concentration meets a permitted activity standard in the regional plan, the water may be discharged to the nearest convenient stormwater system.
- (b) If the water is to be discharged to the wastewater system, the discharge needs written approval from Wellington Water, which may include the need to consider trade waste bylaws and the rate of discharge so as not to overload the sewer pipes or any downstream wastewater pumping stations.

6.12.3.10 Refilling of the reservoir

If the sampling results are satisfactory, the outlet and scour valves should be checked to ensure they are tightly closed, and the reservoir can be refilled using the normal inlet works. No air gap is required for this filling stage.

6.12.3.11 Pre and post-commissioning sampling

The following applies to pre- and post-commissioning sampling of reservoirs:

- (a) A three day sampling programme shall begin once the reservoir has been filled.
- (b) Wellington Water shall be given at least two days advanced warning of the filling to ensure the drinking water assessor is aware of the sampling programme.
- (c) Sampling of the waters should be sub-surface (at least 300 mm below the surface) and may require specialist equipment (suitably disinfected).

- (d) The samples shall be sent immediately to the laboratory (if the samples were not collected by lab staff), where they shall be tested for:
 - (i) Total coliforms
 - (ii) E.Coli (<1)
 - (iii) Free available chlorine (<1 mg/L)
 - (iv) pH
 - (v) Temperature
- (e) The sample results shall be sent to Wellington Water who will advise of any concerns they may have with the results.
- (f) An upper limit has not been set for total coliforms; however, a high result may result in the disinfection process being repeated as elevated total coliform counts may indicate poor disinfection contact time or non-faecal contamination.

6.12.3.12 Commissioning

The following applies to commissioning of reservoirs:

- (a) The reservoir outlet valve can only be opened by Wellington Water on approval of test results.
- (b) The Wellington Water bulk water operators will need to be informed if the reservoir is filled directly from the bulk supply to ensure communication between the reservoir and the pumping station/filling valve is properly established and monitored.
- (c) A commissioning plan should be established to detail the valving sequence to both commission the reservoir and terminate any alternative supply in operation.
- (d) Wellington Water operational staff will take over full operational control of the reservoir once the final set of sample results are cleared by the Regional Public Health. All locks will be changed to the appropriate security series locks and access to the reservoir interior by the contractor is strictly forbidden without permission from Wellington Water.
- (e) The contractor is still permitted to carry out works on the exterior, but care is to be taken around operational fittings such as air-valves and hydrants.

6.13 Reservoirs

The following applies to reservoirs:

- (a) Reservoirs shall be above ground or buried reinforced concrete tanks.
- (b) Reservoirs shall only be buried if required by the District Plan or by a resource consent condition.
- (c) The concrete cover to reinforcement shall be increased 10 mm over and above the requirements of NZS 3101.1&2 to improve the durability of the reservoir.
- (d) The minimum standard for fencing shall be a 1.8 m high, 50 mm diamond, 2.5 mm wire diameter chain link fence with rails top and bottom. Fence posts will be fitted with a spiked cap and access gates will provide padlock protection from vandalism.

However, any fence must be agreed with Wellington Water to complement the surrounding environment.

6.13.1 Foundation and geotechnical assessment

The following applies to reservoir foundation and geotechnical assessments:

- (a) A geotechnical assessment shall be carried out to determine the suitability of the foundation material for the reservoir.
- (b) Drilling on the proposed site, bore logging and interpreting of the data shall be carried out to support any geotechnical investigations.
- (c) A spectra assessment shall be carried out on the proposed site by a recognised seismologist.

6.13.2 Structural design requirements

The structure shall be designed with a 100 year life expectancy and the design shall comply with contemporary design codes which shall include, but not limited to, the NZBC, NZS 3106 and AS/NZS 1170. For serviceability (SLS) and ultimate limit state (ULS) definition, see **Section 2.2 Definitions**.

6.13.2.1 General requirements

The following applies to general structural reservoir design:

- (a) All roof and floor grades shall have a minimum grade of 1%.
- (b) All overflows and air vents shall have mesh barriers that prevent vermin from entering the reservoir.
- (c) Walls shall be either cast in-situ reinforced, pre-stressed concrete or precast concrete wall panels. Precast column, beam and roof units are acceptable.
- (d) Loadings design shall include those from slosh, excavation for repair and rapid changes in water level.
- (e) Any floor, wall or roof joint (including construction joints) shall have the same life as the structure. The Consultant shall consider the alternatives available for the floor slab construction (e.g., continuous floor slab versus construction joints) and demonstrate the best jointing system with the same life as the structure has been chosen.
- (f) All construction joints shall have a minimum of two lines of defence against leakage.
- (g) The reservoir structure is to be designed to cope with a water pressure of at least one metre above the top of the reservoir walls.
- (h) The lowest roof beam must be designed to avoid uplift forces from sloshing waves and be a minimum of 1000 mm above the top water level (TWL) or 50 mm above the maximum water level expected when the reservoir is overflowing (250 mm above TWL). The minimum level of the roof slab shall be at least 450 mm above the TWL. The beams must be away from the overflow.
- (i) The roof structure shall be watertight and graded so as to drain water satisfactorily from the roof area

- (j) Perimeter guttering or concrete nib upstands are not permitted due to their maintenance requirements and the potential to result in roof ponding.

6.13.2.2 Reservoir testing

The following tests are required:

- (a) A roof leakage test will be undertaken upon project completion and involve saturation of the roof surface with a minimum of 25 mm over a period of at least 6 hours. A second test will be undertaken using a drone or boat at the end of the defects period.
- (b) A 7 day reservoir hydrostatic drop test is required prior to reservoir disinfection. The reservoir will be filled to 50mm below the overflow level and monitored to within 1 mm of accuracy.

6.13.2.3 Buried reservoirs

Buried reservoirs are typically not permitted due to maintenance accessibility issues and increased contamination and vandalism risks. Dispensation is required from Wellington Water for any buried reservoirs.

For buried reservoirs:

- (a) A continuous waterproof membrane shall cover the roof.
- (b) Site concrete shall cover the membrane.
- (c) A layer of drainage material shall cover the site concrete to ensure water will not pond on the graded roof.
 - (i) The roof must be strong enough to take the required landscaping, tractor mowing loadings and large digger (at least 10 tonnes) loading for possible future maintenance.
 - (ii) The landscaped material must be adequate to support turf all year around.
 - (iii) A minimum of 300 mm of fill, including top soil, is to be provided over the site concrete which protects the membrane.
- (d) The walls of the reservoir that will be backfilled against, shall be sealed with at least two coats of Mulseal or equivalent after a successful water tightness test.
- (e) A drainage blanket is required on the walls.
- (f) Drainage material and subsoil drain are required to be laid against the walls and must be of a grading and size such that the surface seal coat is not damaged.

6.13.3 Pipework

The following applies to reservoir pipework:

- (a) Crossing of large pipes is to be avoided.
- (b) Consideration must be given to location of pipes relative to ground levels, avoidance of dead legs, access to manually operated valves in an emergency, connection of pipes to the reservoir as they may be below reservoir floor level, means of assembling of pipework, any subsequent maintenance or replacement of valves or equipment, differential movements between pipes and structures, support and anchoring of pipes, access for staff, provision for differential movements where

pipes connect to rigid structures, location of changes in diameter and access to interior of pipes for welded joints and lining reinstatement.

- (c) All pipe and fittings shall comply with the materials specified in **Section 6.2 Materials**. Jointing and laying shall comply with this specification also.
- (d) All pipework shall be protected against corrosion and braced against seismic forces as anticipated by the structural design.
- (e) Consideration shall be given to water testing new reservoirs. Means shall be provided to ensure that the water-tightness of the isolation valves on the inlet, outlet and scour pipes can be confirmed. This may require:
 - (i) Designing downstream pipework such that the valve face can be exposed and witnessed as drip tight.
 - (ii) A second valve being installed downstream of the isolation valve, with a tapping point on the underside of the pipe between the two valves.

6.13.3.1 Valves

The following applies to reservoir valves:

- (a) Valves used in reservoirs shall typically be resilient seated gate valves as per Section 6.2.11 Valves.
- (b) For valves 600 mm and greater, resilient seated butterfly valves as per Section 6.2.11.2 Butterfly valves may be used with appropriate gearing and handwheels. Butterfly valves shall be in a chamber.
- (c) Electrically actuated auto-closing valves of any size may be a resilient seated butterfly valve.

6.13.3.2 Inlet pipework

The following applies to reservoir inlet pipework:

- (a) The inlet pipe shall have a resilient seated gate valve immediately adjacent to the reservoir wall to isolate the reservoir. Any seismic coupling shall be installed immediately upstream of this isolation valve. There are to be no fittings between that valve and the reservoir wall.
- (b) For gravity filled reservoirs, the inlet shall have either a motorised plug valve or an altitude valve upstream of the isolation valve to control the flow into the reservoir as per the proposed filling logic. Reservoirs filled directly from a pumped rising main shall rely on the pump logic to control the filling rate.
- (c) An approved, bi-directional magnetic flow meter shall be installed upstream of the control valve, or isolation valve if no control valve is required.
- (d) The inlet shall enter the reservoir at a lower level, through the floor or wall of the reservoir, and rise as a standpipe to 75% of the TWL. This is to provide a non-return function to prevent the reservoir from emptying in the event of an inlet main failure and to maximise mixing velocities within the reservoir. Alternatively, the inlet may rise up the outside of the reservoir and enter through the wall or roof at a level above the TWL.

- (e) All pipes and fittings shall be flanged or axially restrained between the reservoir and the control valve. A flexible, seismic coupling is required immediately downstream of the inlet valve which is adjacent to the reservoir wall. The coupling shall meet the requirements of deflection, pull-out resistance and elongation as outlined in **Section 6.4 Pipe jointing**. Flex-tend couplings are an example of a fitting that would comply with this requirement.
- (f) A valved bypass (normally shut) shall be provided between the inlet and outlet pipework. This bypass shall be:
 - (i) Upstream of the inlet control valve
 - (ii) Downstream of the inlet magflow meter
 - (iii) Upstream of the outlet magflow meter and
 - (iv) Downstream of the auto-closing valve.

6.13.3.3 Outlet pipework

The following applies to reservoir outlet pipework:

- (a) The outlet pipe shall draw from the base of the reservoir through the floor of the tank.
- (b) The outlet pipe shall have a resilient seated gate valve immediately adjacent to the reservoir wall to isolate the reservoir. There are to be no fittings between that valve and the reservoir wall. Any seismic coupling shall be installed immediately downstream of this isolation valve.
- (c) A tapping shall be provided downstream of the resilient seated gate valve and include a 20 mm stainless steel ball valve which may be used as an alternative pressure tapping for monitoring reservoir level when the scour is being operated.
- (d) The outlet shall have an automatic closing valve downstream of the reservoir isolation valve with a bypass around the valve to allow testing and a manually operated gate valve on it sized to allow average day demand flow through it over a short period.
- (e) A hydrant, or 80 mm resilient seated gate valve with a hydrant outlet, shall be installed between the auto-closing valve and the reservoir isolation valve. This point shall be for emergency distribution of water in the event of catastrophic pipe failure downstream of the auto-closing valve.
- (f) A combination air-valve is required downstream of the auto-closing valve in a chamber or tunnel that complies with the requirements of **Section 6.2.19.1 Chamber**. It shall be sized to ensure the outlet pipeline does not experience negative pressures in the event of a catastrophic pipe failure.
- (g) An approved, bi-directional magnetic flow meter shall be installed downstream of the auto-closing valve.
- (h) All pipe joints shall be flanged or axially restrained between the reservoir and the meter, which is located downstream of the auto-closing valve.

6.13.3.4 Scour pipework

The following applies to reservoir scour pipework:

- (a) A scour valve is required to enable the reservoir to be drained in a controlled fashion.
- (b) The inlet to the scour pipe shall be from a sump in the reservoir floor graded to at a slope of no flatter than 1%.
- (c) The scour main and associated drains shall be sized to enable the full reservoir volume to be drained over a maximum of 24 hours.
- (d) A resilient seated gate valve shall be located in the valve chamber/tunnel to enable isolation of the scour from the downstream network. The flanged valve shall be immediately adjacent to the reservoir wall or floor. A seismic coupling shall be installed immediately downstream of the isolation valve.
- (e) A 20 mm pressure tapping with a stainless steel ball valve shall be included on the scour pipe between the reservoir wall and the isolation valve. The tapping is for a pressure transducer that will record the reservoirs operating level.
- (f) The scour pipe shall connect to the stormwater network. The downstream stormwater network shall be checked to ensure the scour discharge can be conveyed without surcharge during dry-weather including the discharge point and any consenting concerns. The stormwater network shall be upgraded if it is not able to convey the flows.
- (g) All pipes and fittings shall be flanged or axially restrained between the reservoir and the isolation valve immediately downstream of the reservoir wall.

6.13.3.5 Overflow pipe and stormwater assessment

The overflow pipe shall:

- (a) Be sized to convey twice the maximum possible inflow of water when the water level is not less than 200 mm below the top of the reservoir wall (or freeboard).
 - (i) The driving head between the overflow inlet and a point 200 mm below the top of the reservoir wall shall be sufficient to convey twice the maximum inflow regardless of whether water is supplied by pump or by gravity to the reservoir.
 - (ii) The additional capacity is to cater for future increases in pump size or network upgrades increasing the inflow.
- (b) Be an internal standpipe with a bell-mouthed entry. It shall be flanged near the floor to allow future replacement if required. The overflow rim shall be 75 mm above the nominal top water level of the reservoir.
- (c) Connect to a manhole outside the reservoir which will subsequently connect to the stormwater network. The overflow pipe and subsequent drainage system shall comply with **Section 5 Drainage Specifications**.
- (d) The reservoir is to be designed to prevent vermin entry via the overflow pipe. This shall be achieved using 316 stainless steel mesh with a 1 mm opening aperture installed over the bell mouth. The overflow pipe must be designed for losses associated with the mesh. The overflow bell mouth and mesh must be visible for inspection from a reservoir hatch, without entering the reservoir.

The downstream stormwater network shall:

- (e) Be investigated to ensure it can carry the design overflow event (current design pumped or gravity inflow) without surcharge or erosion. It shall be assumed that it is a dry-weather overflow event.

6.13.3.6 Water quality sampling taps

The following applies to reservoir water quality sampling taps:

- (a) A 20 mm connection on the inlet and outlet pipe shall allow both pipes to have water drawn off them for the purposes of testing the incoming and outgoing water quality.
- (b) The sampling taps shall be located either in a valve chamber or tunnel for buried reservoirs, or in the telemetry shed for above ground reservoirs. The location shall be selected to ensure there is a low health and safety risk for monitoring staff.
- (c) The taps shall discharge to a small stainless steel basin that will discharge to a drain or natural ground.

6.13.3.7 Under drainage

Under drainage is for floor and walls (if reservoir is buried) and includes the following:

- (a) A sump is to pick up water from the under drainage outlets and be pumped or piped by gravity to the overflow/scour pipe system.
- (b) The system shall be designed to prevent any surcharging from the scour/overflow when the reservoir is overflow or scouring.
- (c) The under drainage pipework is to drain specific sectors for monitoring purposes. A minimum of six sectors is required. Each sector outlet pipe is to have permanent engraved signage and discharge so any source of any leakage through the reservoir floor and/or walls can be identified.
- (d) The underflow drains are to be laid in a grade away from the reservoir. There shall be no springs or seepage water flows into the under drainage. Any spring/seepage water is to be diverted away from the under drainage.
- (e) The upstream end of the underfloor drains will have a rodding eye to the surface level, or be connected to a buried chamber to allow for bi-directional flushing and inspection.

6.13.4 Roof hatches and ladders

The following applies to roof hatches and ladders into reservoirs:

- (a) Hinged airtight access hatch covers shall be provided as non-venting hatches and will require a concrete, not steel, up-stand on the roof.
- (b) Hatch hinges and padlocks must be covered to protect them from vandalism.
- (c) Hatch covers should weigh 20 kg or less. Where this is not possible lifting struts must be provided.
- (d) A minimum of two hatches are required with each hatch being on opposite sides of the reservoir. A hatch shall be situated adjacent to the rim of the overflow pipe and

another above the primary outlet. At least one of the hatches shall provide inclined access to the interior of the reservoir.

- (e) Full perimeter roof edge protection barriers shall be designed and constructed. Barriers shall be 1.2 m in height and include a bottom footplate and fabricated from mild steel and hot dip galvanised.
- (f) All ladders and safety rails shall have extendable handrails and shall be designed to provide a safe environment for people working on the reservoir and shall be designed to meet the latest standards and codes.
 - (i) Landings will be required on ladders.
 - (ii) More than one ladder into the reservoir may be required for safe egress.
- (g) At least one set of water level probes will be required. Water level probes are to be adjacent to the overflow which is adjacent to a hatch.
- (h) The internal access ladder(s) shall incorporate handrails and be installed at a slope of 65 to 70 degrees from the horizontal.
 - (i) Internal steelwork shall be stainless steel 316.
 - (ii) Provision shall be made at the hatch covers for the installation of limit switches and associated cabling to indicate when the lids are open as well as one set of water level probes.
 - (iii) Wellington Water shall advise switch and probe requirements.
- (i) Where compartments or inner/outer tanks are adopted, the hatches are to be positioned in such a way that there are two hatches per compartment or inner/outer tanks. Care should be taken that the foot of the ladders do not interfere with the pipe work inside the reservoir.
- (j) Fixed full height access stairs shall be provided for external access. It is preferable that stairs are designed as a 'wrap around' design. External staircases shall be fabricated from mild steel and hot dip galvanised.
- (k) The requirement for internal staircases shall be discussed with Wellington Water. Internal staircases shall be stainless steel and designed so that they could be disassembled through the reservoir hatch opening.

6.13.5 Electrical, monitoring and control equipment

The electrical and SCADA specification shall be obtained from Wellington Water prior to design. Notwithstanding this, the reservoir shall have:

- (a) An approved seismically activated trigger system which shall provide the stimulus to operate the auto-closing valve in the event of an emergency.
- (b) A pressure transducer accurate to 0.5 kPa (50 mm H₂O) to record the water level in the reservoir.
- (c) Monitoring equipment to measure the instantaneous and cumulative inflow and discharge of water to and from the reservoir.
- (d) Security monitoring equipment which shall monitor access alarms to the hatches and doors.
- (e) Control equipment to operate the auto-closing valve as required.

- (f) A telemetry hut where the electrical and control equipment shall be housed in a dry and ventilated valve chamber, tunnel or external building. It shall be designed and constructed to the same structural standards as the reservoir it serves.

6.14 Water supply pumping stations

The following applies to water supply pumping stations:

- (a) Water supply pumps shall generally be housed in an above ground structure.
- (b) Underground stations will not typically be permitted.
- (c) Water supply pumping stations shall have 100% standby for a duty-standby pump arrangement, or 50% standby for duty-assist-standby pump arrangement.
- (d) The station site shall be on a separately titled lot in the subdivision with a sealed vehicle access to a formed road. The lot shall be vested with council. If required by the council or Wellington Water, the site shall be secured to prevent public access as outlined by Wellington Water.
- (e) Architectural featuring of any visible structures shall be within the context of the proposed subdivision and shall be subject to the approval of Wellington Water.
- (f) The minimum standard for fencing is a 1.8 m high, 50 mm diamond, 2.5 mm wire diameter chain link fence with rails top and bottom. In residential areas, fence design shall be considered within the context of the neighbourhood and/or agreed with adjacent landowners.

6.14.1 Building

The following applies to water supply pumping station buildings:

- (a) The building that houses the pumps and electrical equipment shall:
 - (i) Be above ground where possible.
 - (ii) Have a standard 2100 mm high x 810 mm wide security door as a minimum.
 - (iii) Have a 2100 mm high by 1600 mm wide or larger doors for stations where the pump unit cannot fit through a standard door.
 - (iv) Contain gantry system which will enable pumps to be placed within 900 mm of the access door or provide another mechanical means to remove pumps from the station.
 - (v) Be ventilated to ensure suitable volume of air change to meet both NZBC requirements and the cooling needs of the pump/motor sets.
 - (vi) Have smoke detectors and emergency lighting connected to SCADA for alarming.
 - (vii) Be positioned clear of land floodable by stormwater under 1% AEP event and clear of any secondary flow path.
 - (viii) Have suitable, covered cable/pipe trenches and ducts to ensure clear working space and access around pumps.
 - (ix) Have suitable drainage of floor and trenches.
 - (x) Have suitable electric lighting.
- (b) The building shall have acoustic mitigations to minimise the amount of pump noise that emits from the station. The District Plan guidelines for noise shall be considered

an absolute minimum, and further mitigation is required where practical. This includes acoustic consideration for the building including vents, doors and roof.

- (c) Electrical switchboards shall be housed above ground.
- (d) The switchboards and pumps shall be separated so that the switchboards cannot be water damaged if a leak occurs in the pipework.
- (e) Windows are not to be installed in pumping stations.

6.14.2 Pumps

The proposed pumpset shall be from a manufacturer and be a model approved by Wellington Water. That approval may be provisional on consideration of duty, efficiency, life and materials.

Pumpsets shall preferably be:

- (a) Fitted with TEFC 4 pole electric motors (1450 rpm).
- (b) Horizontally mounted and long-coupled configuration.
- (c) Variable speed compatible motors and cabling.
- (d) Flanged inlet and outlet.
- (e) Ductile or cast iron base.
- (f) Ductile, cast or stainless steel pump casing.

Concessions on speed and configuration can be made for smaller pumps (less than 15 kW) provided other mitigations are in place to compensate for noise and maintenance access.

All pumps, whether in a two or three pump arrangement, shall be of the same, make, model and duty size.

6.14.2.1 Pump plinths

The following applies to pump plinths:

- (a) Pumps shall be installed on reinforced concrete plinths.
- (b) Where levelling nuts are used to set the pump base before pouring the plinth, 6 mm insertion rubber “washers” shall be used with a standard steel washer between the rubber and levelling nut. This is to ensure full engagement of the base with the subsequently cured concrete plinth.
- (c) The weight of pump plinths shall typically be the combined weight of the pump, motor, baseplate, coupling and coupling guard.

6.14.3 Pipework

The following applies to water system pump station pipework:

- (a) Pipework shall be ductile iron manufactured to AS/NZS 2280 and fusion epoxy bonded coated to AS/NZS 4158 or STCL manufactured to NZS 4442.
- (b) STCL pipe shall be internally lined with Portland cement mortar and be fusion bonded polyethylene wrapped, Polyken tape wrapped or epoxy coated to AS/NZS 3862.
- (c) They shall have a minimum pressure rating of PN35.

- (d) With the exception of pipework directly connected to the pump flanges, unrestrained mechanical couplers shall NOT be used. Pipework shall be continuous and thrust type dismantling joints shall be installed where required for dis-assembly and re-assembly.
- (e) Unrestrained couplings such as bellows or mechanical couplings shall be used immediately after the pump discharge and suction flanges in order to prevent vibrations from the pump passing into the pipework, creating noise. The pipework shall be secured to resist the unbalanced forces at the pump connection.
- (f) Flanged bends, tees and “specials” fabricated from STCL may be permitted where ductile iron fittings are not practicable. These shall be manufactured to the requirements of NZS 4442 and polyethylene tape wrapped and concrete lined at the fabricators, or epoxy coated to AS/NZS 3862.
- (g) 316/316L/304/304L stainless steel (schedule 40 or 80) shall also be permitted.
- (h) The pipework shall be designed such that:
 - (i) Each pump can be isolated with resilient seated gate valves and butterfly valves, and removed whilst the other pumps are in operation.
 - (ii) All valves in ground and buildings, for both trunk main and reticulation mains, shall be anti-clockwise closing. All valves shall include a tag or other means to clearly indicate closing direction.
 - (iii) There is a non-slam non-return valve immediately upstream of each pump.
 - (iv) Air valves installed immediately upstream of the pumps for the release of air when charging the pipework and for entry of air when draining the pipework.
 - (v) Consideration should be given to installing an air valve immediately downstream if the non-return valve to reduce pressure transience on the discharge pipework.
 - (vi) There is suitable room around the pipework to access flanges and fittings.
- (i) Flanges in the local water network shall comply with the following:
 - (i) Ductile iron flanges shall comply with the latest revision of AS/NZS 4087 Figure B5.
 - (ii) Carbon steel flanges shall comply with the latest revision of AS/NZS 4087 Figure B7.
 - (iii) No other flange material shall be permissible.
- (j) Flanges in the bulk water pipeline shall comply with the following:
 - (i) Rated PN16 and comply with the latest revision of AS/NZS 4331, except as detailed below.
 - (ii) Where a higher rated flange is required, flange shall be rated PN25 and comply with the latest revision of AS/NZS 4331.
 - (iii) Flanges on 375 mm nominal diameter pipe (426 mm O.D.) shall comply with the latest revision of AS/NZS 4087 Figure B5 for ductile iron flanges and AS/NZS 4087 Figure B7 for steel flanges.
- (k) All pipework shall be supported and designed to withstand seismic loadings as determined for the seismic criticality (see **Section 3.7.4 Determination of Seismic Criticality** of the *Regional Standard for Water Services*) of the structure.

- (l) Unrestrained couplings such as bellows or mechanical couplings shall not be used immediately after the pump discharge or suction flange unless the unbalanced forces on the pump are avoided.
- (m) A hydrant shall be installed on both the suction and discharge mains entering the pumping station. This shall allow a PRV bypass or alternative pump connection external to the station. Depending on the zone arrangement, Wellington Water may require a permanent PRV bypass (remotely controlled) is installed as well as any required isolating valves and pipework.

6.14.4 Pumping station serving as a reservoir

The following applies to pumping stations that serve reservoirs:

- (a) Stations shall be designed to allow all pumps to run simultaneously.
- (b) The duty points of the pumps shall be selected with consideration to the following criteria:
 - (i) Downstream reservoir set at 85% capacity.
 - (ii) Upstream reservoir set at 85% capacity.
 - (iii) Network demand equivalent to the peak period average day demand.

6.14.5 Electrical, monitoring and control equipment

The electrical and SCADA specification shall be obtained from Wellington Water prior to design. The pump station shall have the following monitoring equipment:

- (a) A magnetic flow meter installed on the common discharge, or alternatively, on the common suction.
- (b) A pressure transducer on the common discharge capable of reading the gauge pressure to ± 5 kPa.
- (c) A pressure transducer on the common suction capable of reading the gauge pressure to ± 5 kPa.
- (d) A 20 mm tapping on each of the pumps' suction pipework between the isolation valve and the pump, and 6 mm copper tubing leading from the tapping to the gauge board.
- (e) A 20 mm tapping on each of the pumps' discharge pipework between the pump and the non-return valve, and 6 mm copper tubing leading from the tapping to the gauge board.
- (f) A gauge board with oil filled dial gauges with a minimum 100 mm diameter face.

7 APPENDICES

Appendix 1	Standard Details	154
------------	------------------------	-----

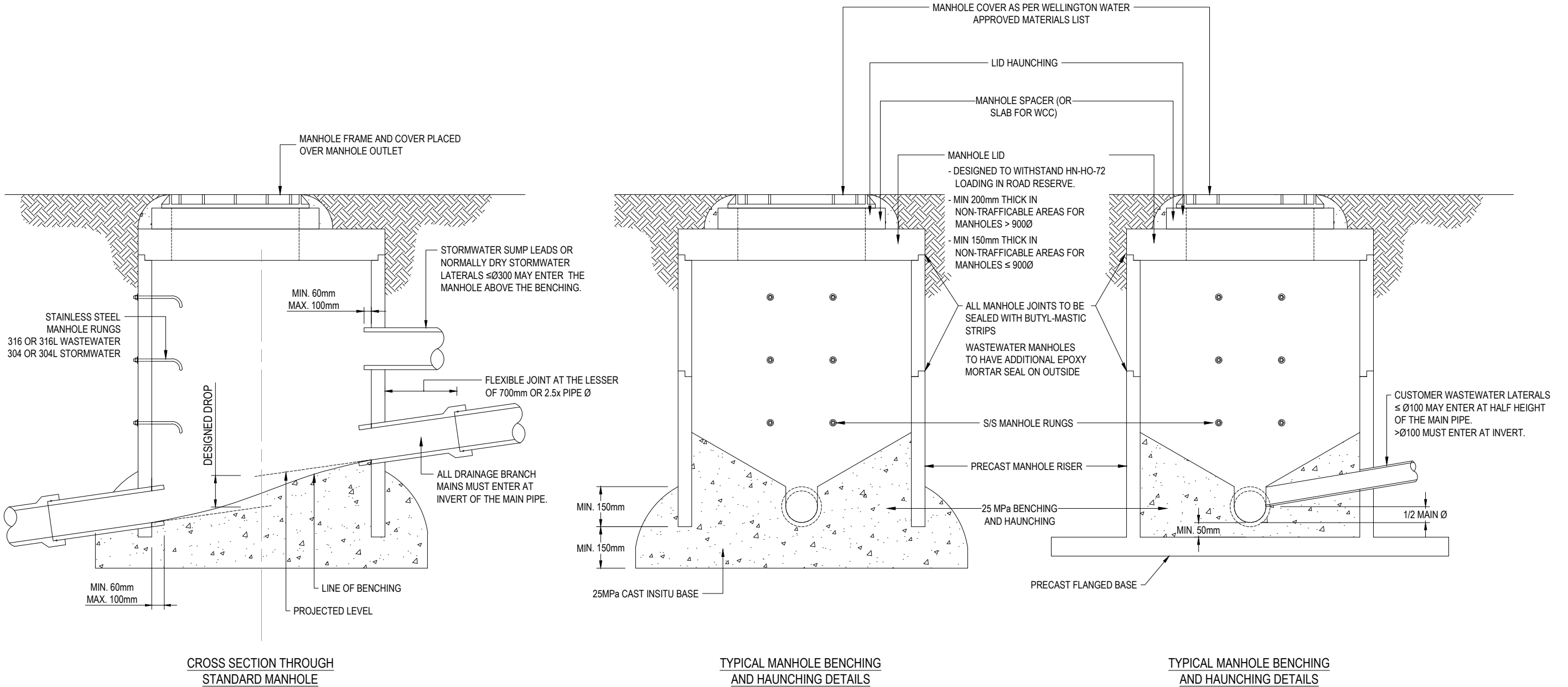
Appendix 1 Standard Details

The following Standard Details are provided below:

- DR01 – Manhole Details
- DR02 – Internal Drop Details
- DR03 – Typical Trench and Waterstop Details
- DR04 – Baffled Sump Plan and Sections
- DR05 – Trapped Yard Sump
- DR06 – Possible Location for Stormwater Soakage in Upper Hutt
- DR07 – Lateral Connections to Public Stormwater or Wastewater Mains
- DR08 – Tree Dripline
- DR09 – Building in Close Proximity
- WS01 – Typical Water Reticulation Layout
- WS02 – Water Distribution Pipe Junctions and Connections
- WS03 – Typical Thrust Block Details
- WS04 – Typical Anchor Block Details
- WS05 – Typical Valve Details
- WS06 – Rider Main Scour Detail
- WS07 – Fire Hydrant Box
- WS08 – Typical Domestic Manifold and Water Meter
- WS09 – Below Ground Meter and Backflow Installation
- WS10 – Above Ground Meter and Backflow Installation
- WS11 – Below Ground Meter and Backflow Installation
- WS12 – Above Ground Meter and Backflow Installation
- WS13 – Examples of Water Main Connections

NOTES:

1. MANHOLES AND BASES TO BE DESIGNED AGAINST FLOATATION WITH A SAFETY FACTOR OF 1.25 IN AREAS OF HIGH WATER TABLE OR LIQUEFACTION POTENTIAL.
2. MANHOLE BENCHING AND BASE TO BE POURED TO A MINIMUM 150mm BELOW LOWEST PIPE INVERT. THIS INCLUDES MINIMUM DEPTH BETWEEN LOWEST PIPE INVERT AND PRECAST FLANGED BASE.
3. SAFETY GRILLES SHALL BE FITTED INTO MANHOLE ACCESS LID FRAMES FOR ALL NEW MANHOLES THAT ARE 3m OR DEEPER. GRILLES SHALL COMPLY WITH AS3996 CLASS A AND BE CONSTRUCTED FROM STAINLESS STEEL 316L GRADE OR AN APPROVED ALTERNATIVE MATERIAL WITH ADEQUATE STRENGTH AND CORROSION PROPERTIES.



REV	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	REV	DATE	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	DATE
A	PRELIMINARY ISSUE	AL			02/20				
B	MANHOLE DETAILS AMENDMENT	AL			03/21				



DESIGN	WWL	-
UPDATE	A MCDONALD	10/21
DRAWING UPDATE	A LIM	10/21
CHECKED	E GREENBERG	11/21
REVIEWED	T STRANG	11/21
APPROVED	T STRANG	11/21

REGIONAL SPECIFICATION FOR WATER SERVICES	
MANHOLE DETAILS	

SCALE: NOT TO SCALE	SHEET No. 1 OF 1 SHEETS.
DRAWING SIZE: A1	PROJECT/FILE NUMBER:
DRAWING N°: DR01	

THIS DRAWING AND ITS CONTENTS ARE THE PROPERTY OF WELLINGTON WATER LIMITED AND ITS CLIENT COUNCILS. ANY REPRODUCTION OR USE, IN FULL OR PART, MUST BE AUTHORISED BY THE OWNER.

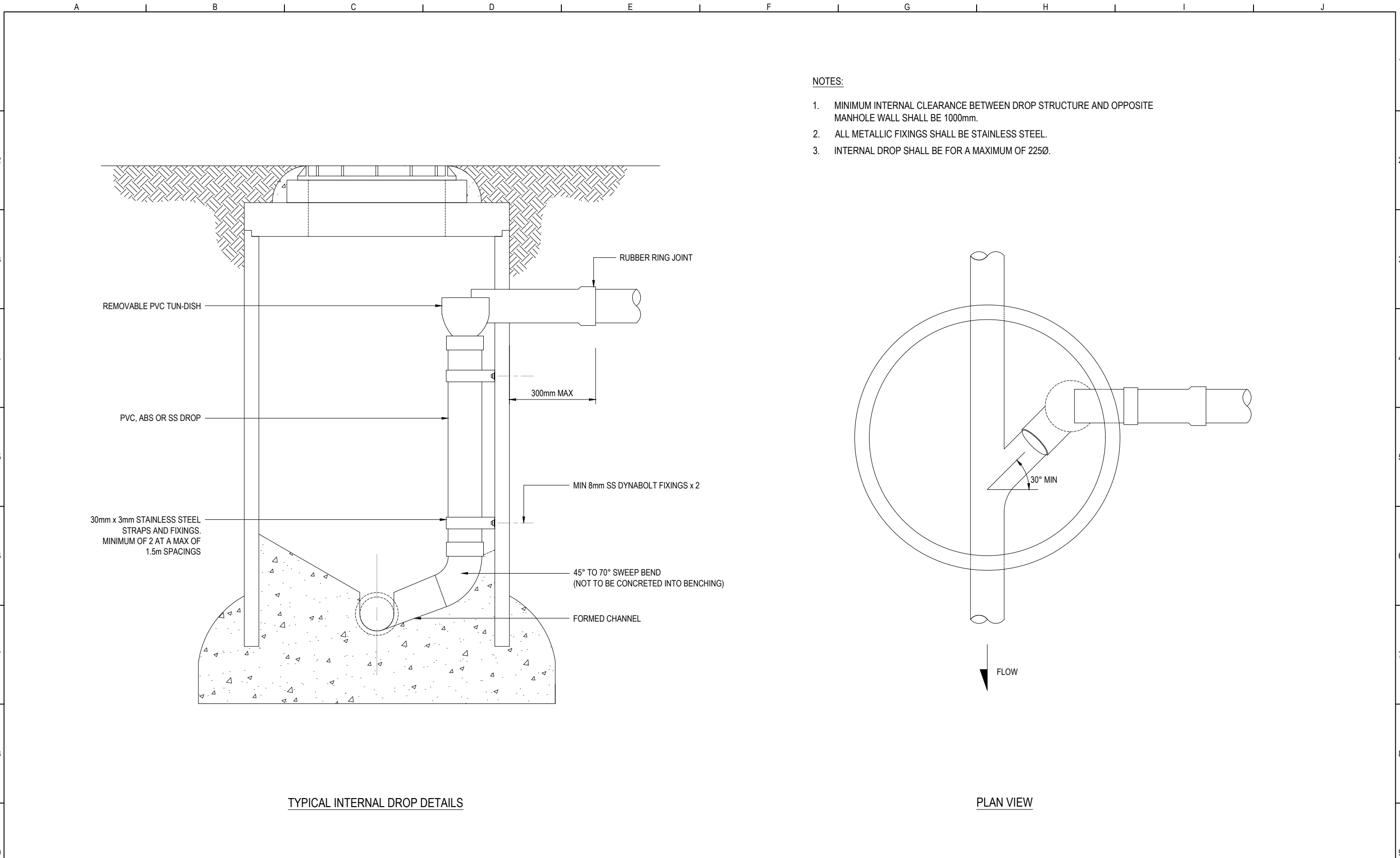
WARNING: PRINTED COPIES ARE UNCONTROLLED



PLOT DETAILS:
Date Plotted: Nov 26, 2021 - 4:05pm
Plotted By: Andrew Lim

File Name: DR01 (2021) Manhole details.dwg
File Location: C:\USERS\ALIM\ONEDRIVE - WELLINGTON\WATER SERVICES STANDARD DWG\WWL TEMPLATE\DR01-05





NOTES:

1. MINIMUM INTERNAL CLEARANCE BETWEEN DROP STRUCTURE AND OPPOSITE MANHOLE WALL SHALL BE 1000mm.
2. ALL METALLIC FIXINGS SHALL BE STAINLESS STEEL.
3. INTERNAL DROP SHALL BE FOR A MAXIMUM OF 225Ø.

REV	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	REV	DATE	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	DATE
A	PRELIMINARY ISSUE	AL			02/20				



DESIGN	WWL	-
UPDATE	E GREENBERG	10/21
DRAWING UPDATE	A LIM	10/21
CHECKED	E GREENBERG	11/21
REVIEWED	T STRANG	11/21
APPROVED	T STRANG	11/21

REGIONAL SPECIFICATION FOR WATER SERVICES	
INTERNAL DROP DETAILS	

SCALE: NOT TO SCALE	SHEET No. 1 OF 1 SHEETS.
DRAWING SIZE: A1	PROJECT/FILE NUMBER: -
DRAWING N°: DR02	

© COPYRIGHT: THIS DRAWING AND ITS CONTENTS ARE THE PROPERTY OF WELLINGTON WATER LIMITED AND ITS CLIENT COUNCILS. ANY REPRODUCTION OR USE, IN FULL OR PART, MUST BE AUTHORISED BY THE OWNER.

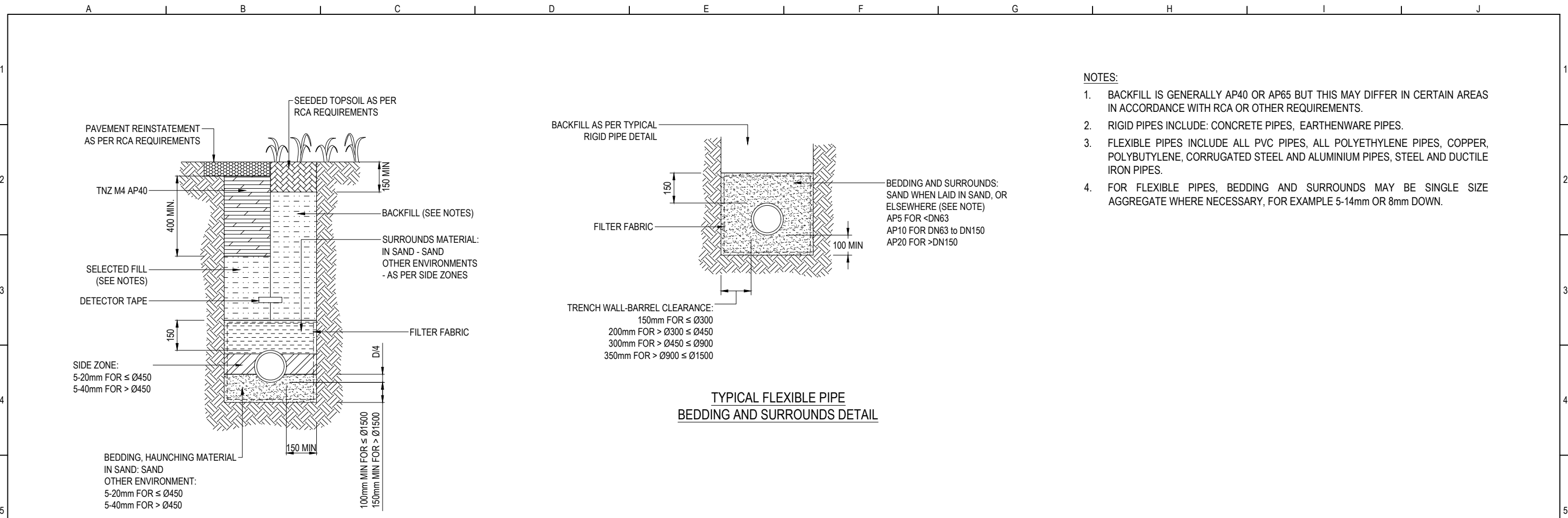
WARNING: PRINTED COPIES ARE UNCONTROLLED



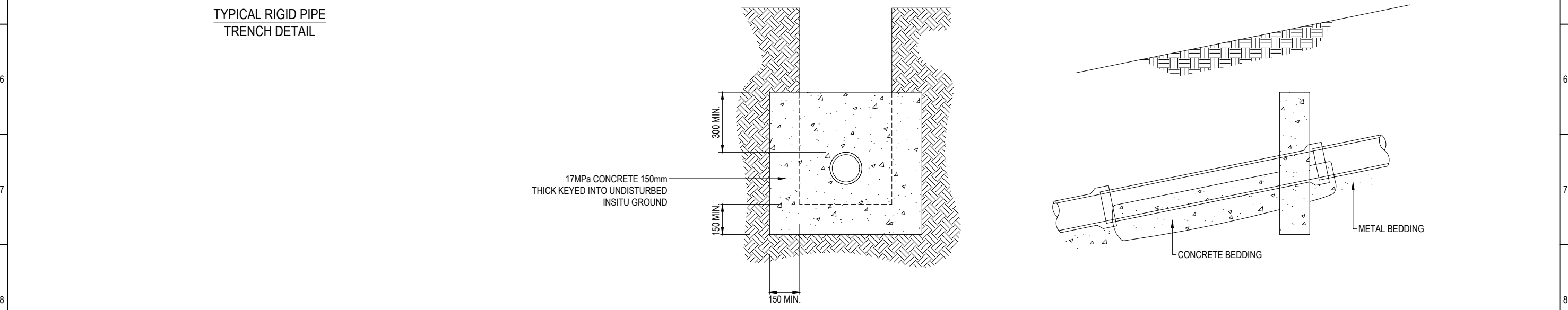
PLOT DETAILS:
Date Plotted: Nov 26, 2021 - 4:14pm
Plotted By: Andrew Lim

File Name: DR02 (2021) Internal drop details.dwg
File Location: C:\USERS\ALIM\ONEDRIVE - WELLINGTON\WATER SERVICES STANDARD DWG\WWL

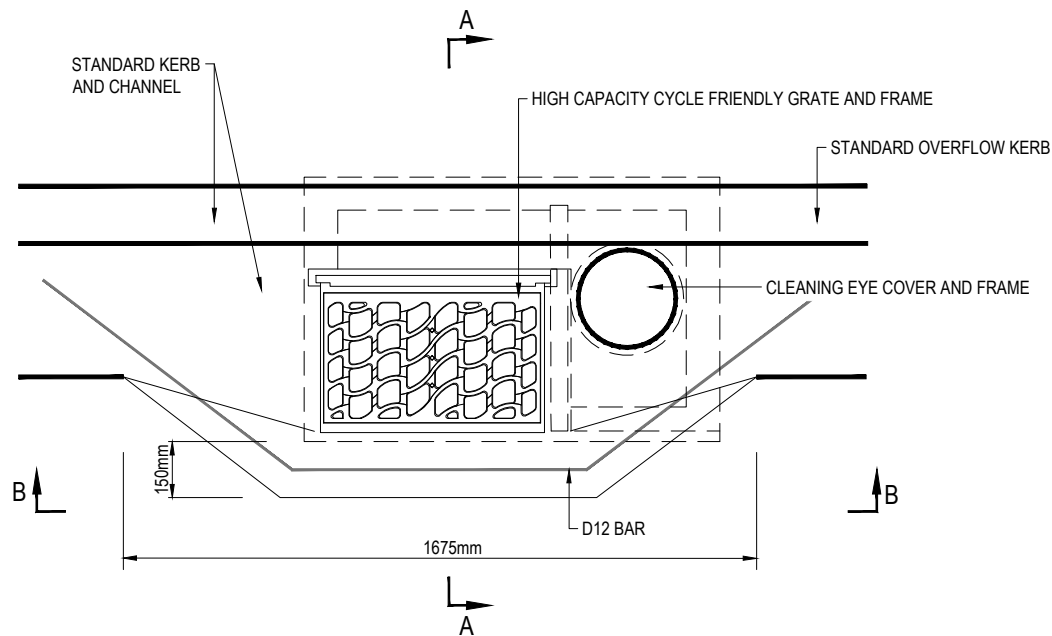




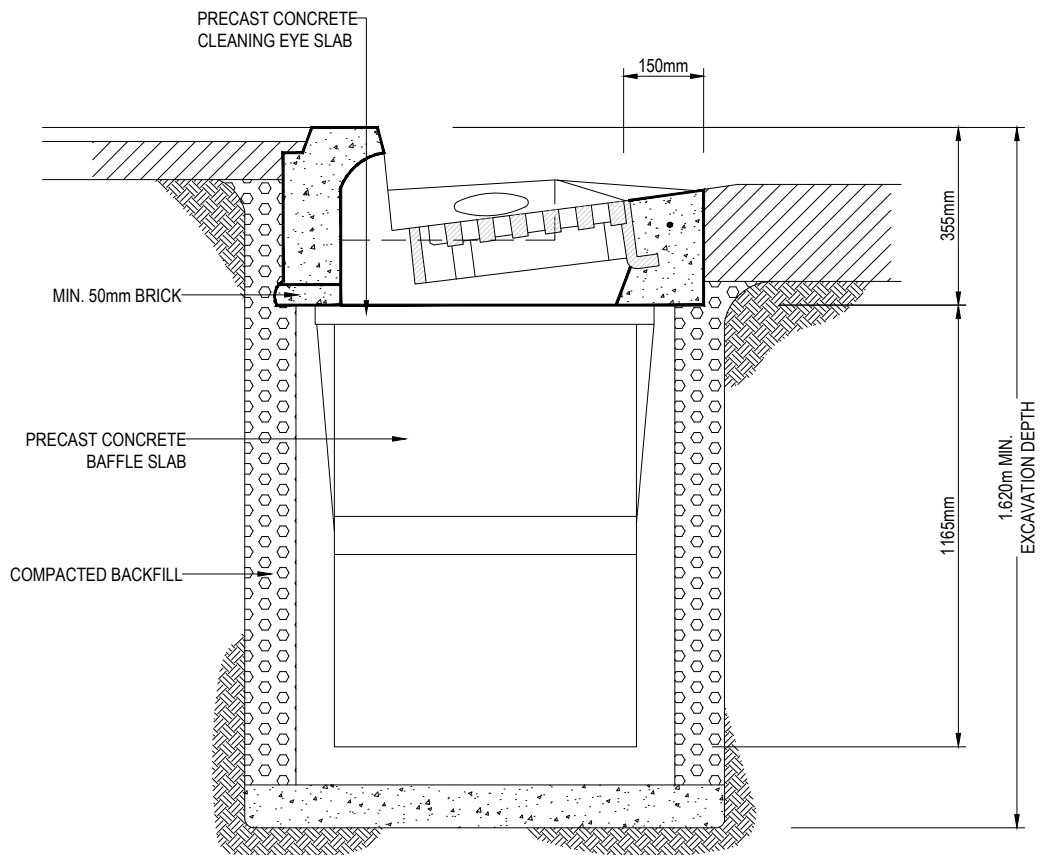
- NOTES:
1. BACKFILL IS GENERALLY AP40 OR AP65 BUT THIS MAY DIFFER IN CERTAIN AREAS IN ACCORDANCE WITH RCA OR OTHER REQUIREMENTS.
 2. RIGID PIPES INCLUDE: CONCRETE PIPES, EARTHENWARE PIPES.
 3. FLEXIBLE PIPES INCLUDE ALL PVC PIPES, ALL POLYETHYLENE PIPES, COPPER, POLYBUTYLENE, CORRUGATED STEEL AND ALUMINIUM PIPES, STEEL AND DUCTILE IRON PIPES.
 4. FOR FLEXIBLE PIPES, BEDDING AND SURROUNDS MAY BE SINGLE SIZE AGGREGATE WHERE NECESSARY, FOR EXAMPLE 5-14mm OR 8mm DOWN.



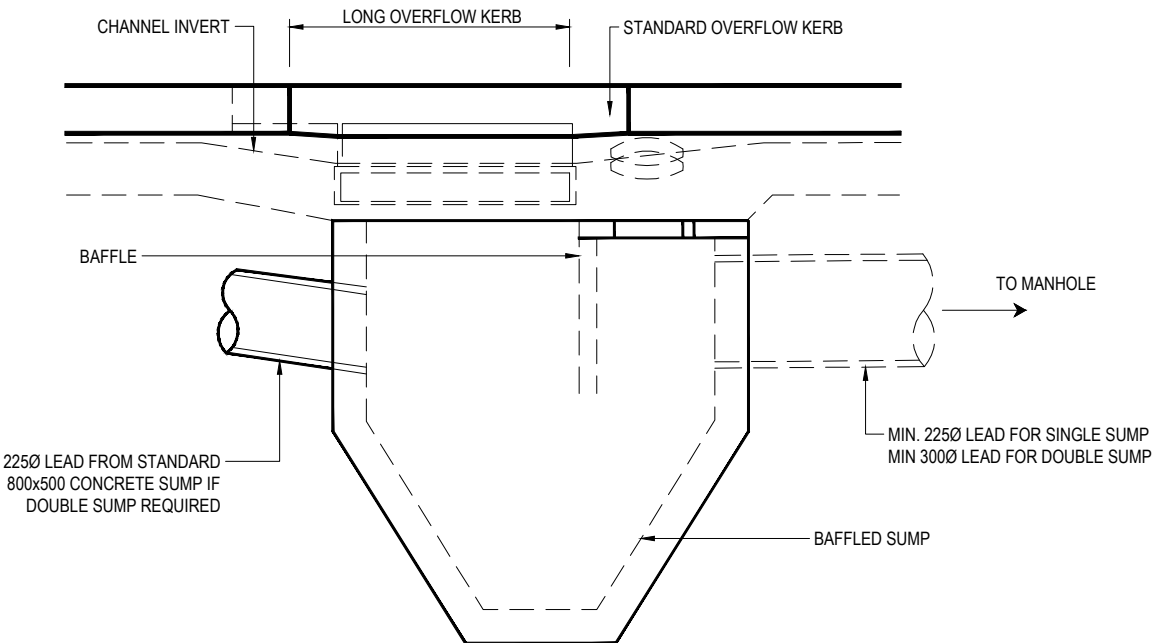
REV	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	REV	DATE	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	DATE	DESIGN	WWL	-	REGIONAL SPECIFICATION FOR WATER SERVICES	SCALE: NOT TO SCALE	SHEET No. 1
A	PRELIMINARY ISSUE	AL			02/20					UPDATE	E GREENBERG	10/21	TYPICAL TRENCH AND WATERSTOP DETAILS	DRAWING SIZE: A1	OF 1 SHEETS.
										DRAWING UPDATE	A LIM	10/21			
										CHECKED	E GREENBERG	11/21			
										REVIEWED	T STRANG	11/21			
										APPROVED	T STRANG	11/21			



SINGLE BAFFLED SUMP - PLAN



SECTION A-A



SECTION B-B

NOTES:
1. SUMPS ALSO REQUIRE COUNCIL RCA APPROVAL.

REV	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	DATE	REV	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	DATE
A	PRELIMINARY ISSUE	AL		02/20					
B	NOTE ADDED	JS		07/24					



DESIGN	WWL	-
UPDATE	E GREENBERG	10/21
DRAWING UPDATE	A LIM	10/21
CHECKED	E GREENBERG	11/21
REVIEWED	T STRANG	11/21
APPROVED	T STRANG	11/21

REGIONAL SPECIFICATION FOR WATER SERVICES	
BAFFLED SUMP PLAN AND SECTIONS	

SCALE: NOT TO SCALE	SHEET No. 1 OF 1 SHEETS.
DRAWING SIZE: A1	PROJECT/FILE NUMBER:
DRAWING N°: DR04	

© COPYRIGHT: THIS DRAWING AND ITS CONTENTS ARE THE PROPERTY OF WELLINGTON WATER LIMITED AND ITS CLIENT COUNCILS. ANY REPRODUCTION OR USE, IN FULL OR PART, MUST BE AUTHORISED BY THE OWNER.

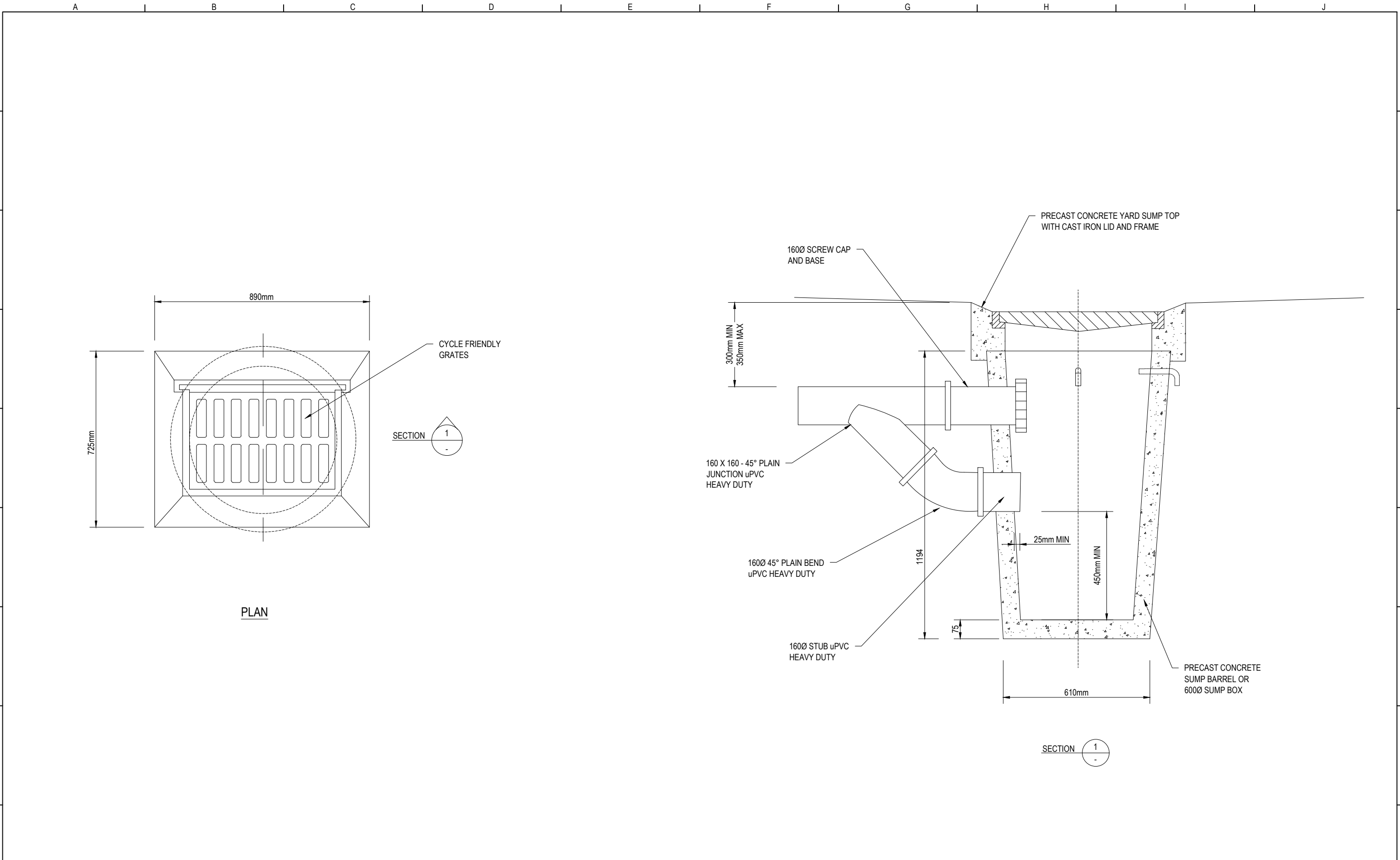
WARNING: PRINTED COPIES ARE UNCONTROLLED



PLOT DETAILS:
Date Plotted:
Plotted By: Jack Scott

File Name:
File Location: C:\USERS\JACK.SCOTT\ONE DRIVE - WELLINGTON WATER\DOCUMENTS\REGIONAL SPEC DRAWINGS\DRAWINGS - FINAL





REV	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	REV	DATE	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	DATE
A	PRELIMINARY ISSUE	AL			02/20				



DESIGN	WWL	-
UPDATE	E GREENBERG	10/21
DRAWING UPDATE	A LIM	10/21
CHECKED	E GREENBERG	11/21
REVIEWED	T STRANG	11/21
APPROVED	T STRANG	11/21

REGIONAL SPECIFICATION FOR WATER SERVICES	
TRAPPED YARD SUMP	

SCALE: NOT TO SCALE	SHEET No. 1 OF 1 SHEETS.
DRAWING SIZE: A1	PROJECT/FILE NUMBER:
DRAWING N°: DR05	

© COPYRIGHT: THIS DRAWING AND ITS CONTENTS ARE THE PROPERTY OF WELLINGTON WATER LIMITED AND ITS CLIENT COUNCILS. ANY REPRODUCTION OR USE, IN FULL OR PART, MUST BE AUTHORISED BY THE OWNER.

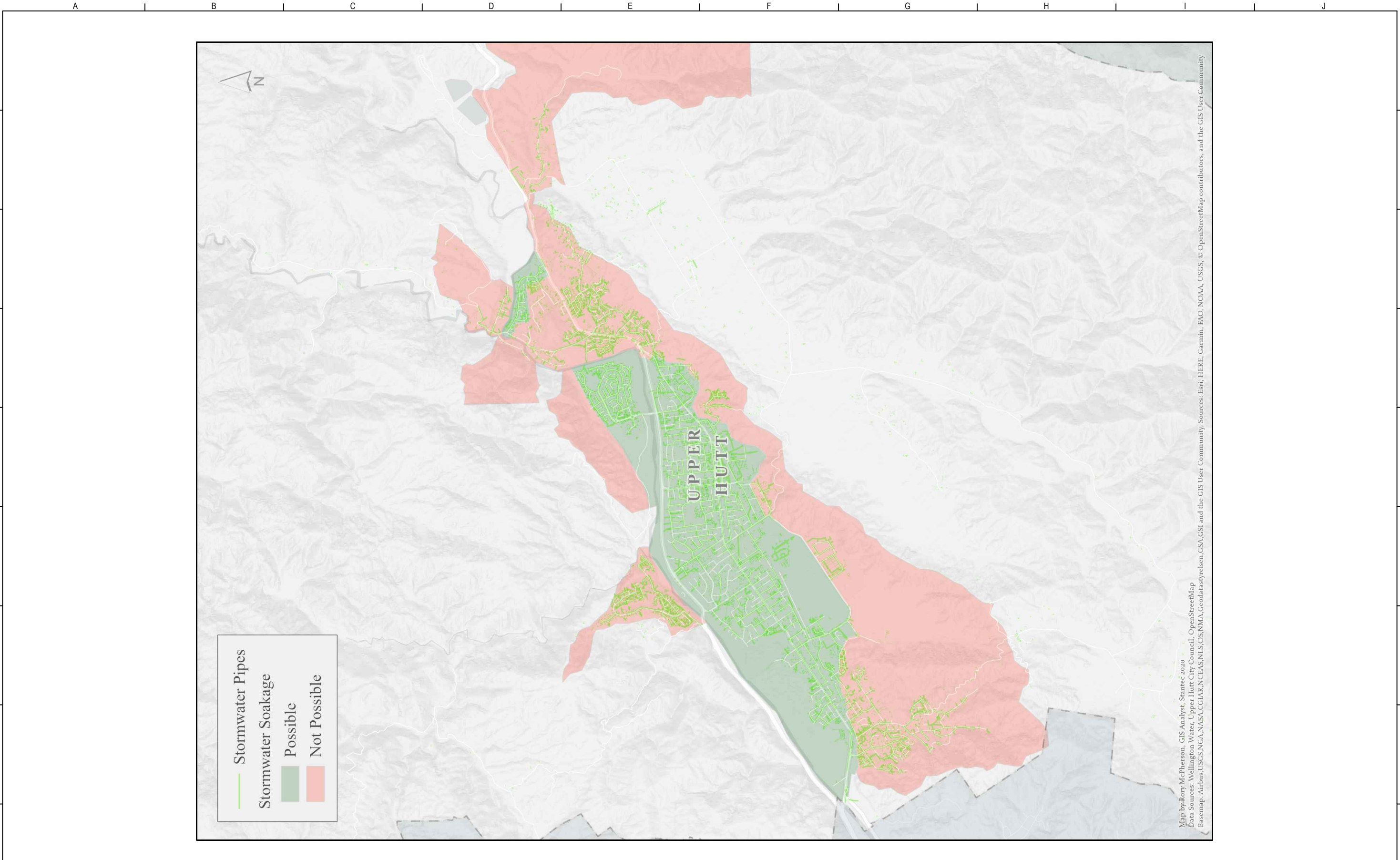
WARNING: PRINTED COPIES ARE UNCONTROLLED



PLOT DETAILS:
Date Plotted: Nov 29, 2021 - 9:44am
Plotted By: Andrew Lim

File Name: DR05 (2021) Trapped yard sump.dwg
File Location: C:\USERS\ALIM\ONEDRIVE - WELLINGTON\WATER\007 WWL\WWL\WATER SERVICES STANDARD DWG\WWL TEMPLATE\DR01-05





REV	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	REV	DATE	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	DATE
A	PRELIMINARY	AA		02/20					



DESIGN	WWL	-
UPDATE	E GREENBERG	10/21
DRAWING UPDATE	A LIM	10/21
CHECKED	E GREENBERG	11/21
REVIEWED	T STRANG	11/21
APPROVED	T STRANG	11/21

REGIONAL SPECIFICATION FOR WATER SERVICES

POSSIBLE LOCATION FOR STORMWATER SOAKAGE
IN UPPER HUTT

SCALE: NOT TO SCALE	SHEET No. 1 OF 1 SHEETS.
DRAWING SIZE: A1	PROJECT/FILE NUMBER: -
DRAWING N°: DR06	

THIS DRAWING AND ITS CONTENTS ARE THE PROPERTY OF WELLINGTON WATER LIMITED AND ITS CLIENT COUNCILS. ANY REPRODUCTION OR USE, IN FULL OR PART, MUST BE AUTHORISED BY THE OWNER.

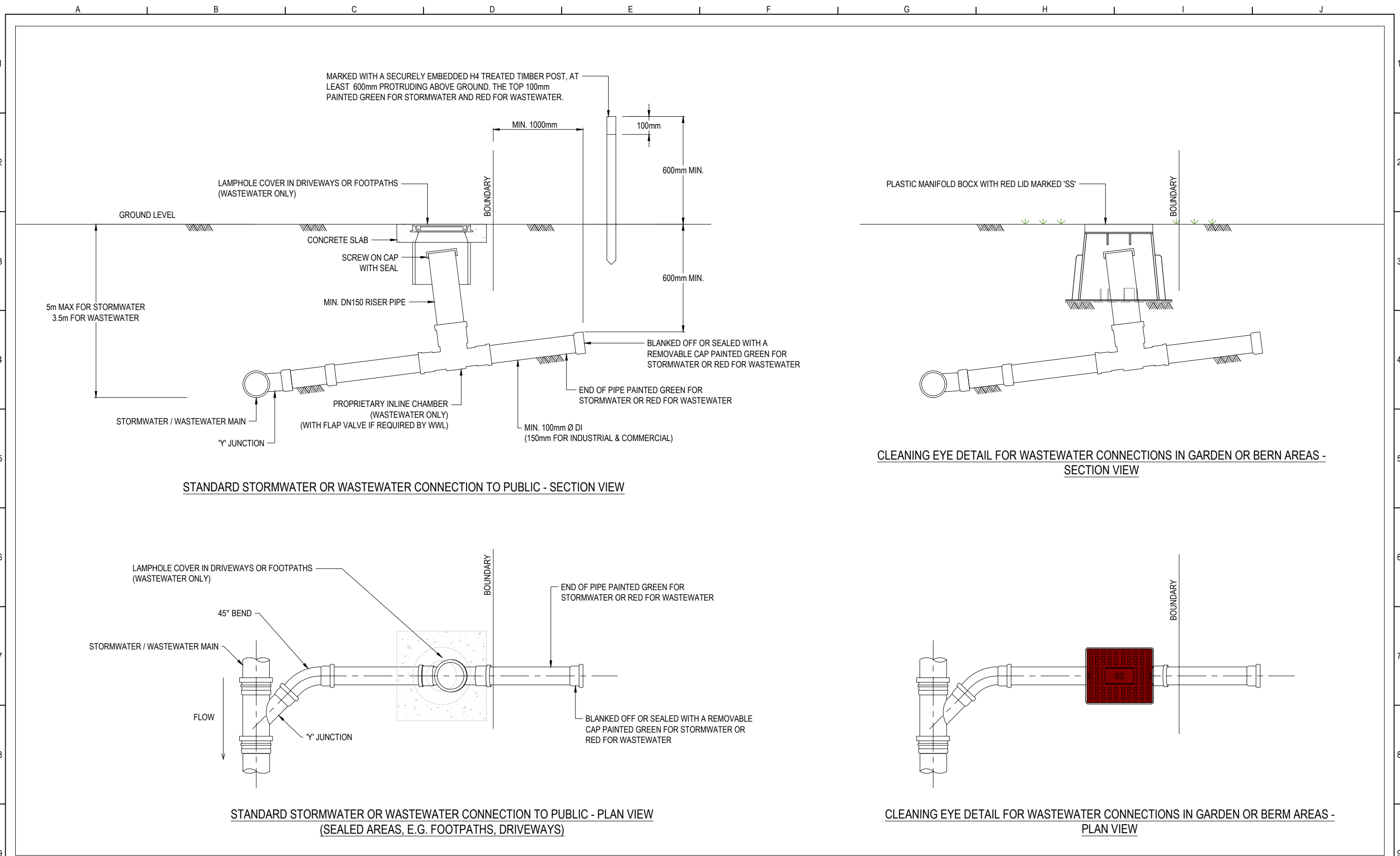
WARNING: PRINTED COPIES ARE UNCONTROLLED



PLOT DETAILS:
Date Plotted: Dec 01, 2021 - 4:42pm
Plotted By: Andrew Lim

File Name: DR06 (2021) Stormwater soakage map.dwg
File Location: C:\USERS\ALIM\ONEDRIVE - WELLINGTON\WATER\007 WWL\WWL\WATER SERVICES STANDARD DWG\WWL TEMPLATE\DR01-05





REV	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	REV	DATE	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	DATE
A	PRELIMINARY	AL			03/20				
B	CLEANING EYE DETAIL ADDED	AL	TS		10/21				



DESIGN	WWL	-
UPDATE	T STRANG	10/21
DRAWING UPDATE	A LIM	10/21
CHECKED	E GREENBERG	11/21
REVIEWED	T STRANG	11/21
APPROVED	T STRANG	11/21

REGIONAL SPECIFICATION FOR WATER SERVICES
LATERAL CONNECTIONS TO PUBLIC STORMWATER OR WASTEWATER MAIN

SCALE: NOT TO SCALE	SHEET No. 1 OF 1 SHEETS.
DRAWING SIZE: A1	PROJECT/FILE NUMBER:
DRAWING N°: DR07	

THIS DRAWING AND ITS CONTENTS ARE THE PROPERTY OF
© COPYRIGHT: WELLINGTON WATER LIMITED AND ITS CLIENT COUNCILS.
ANY REPRODUCTION OR USE, IN FULL OR PART, MUST BE
AUTHORISED BY THE OWNER.

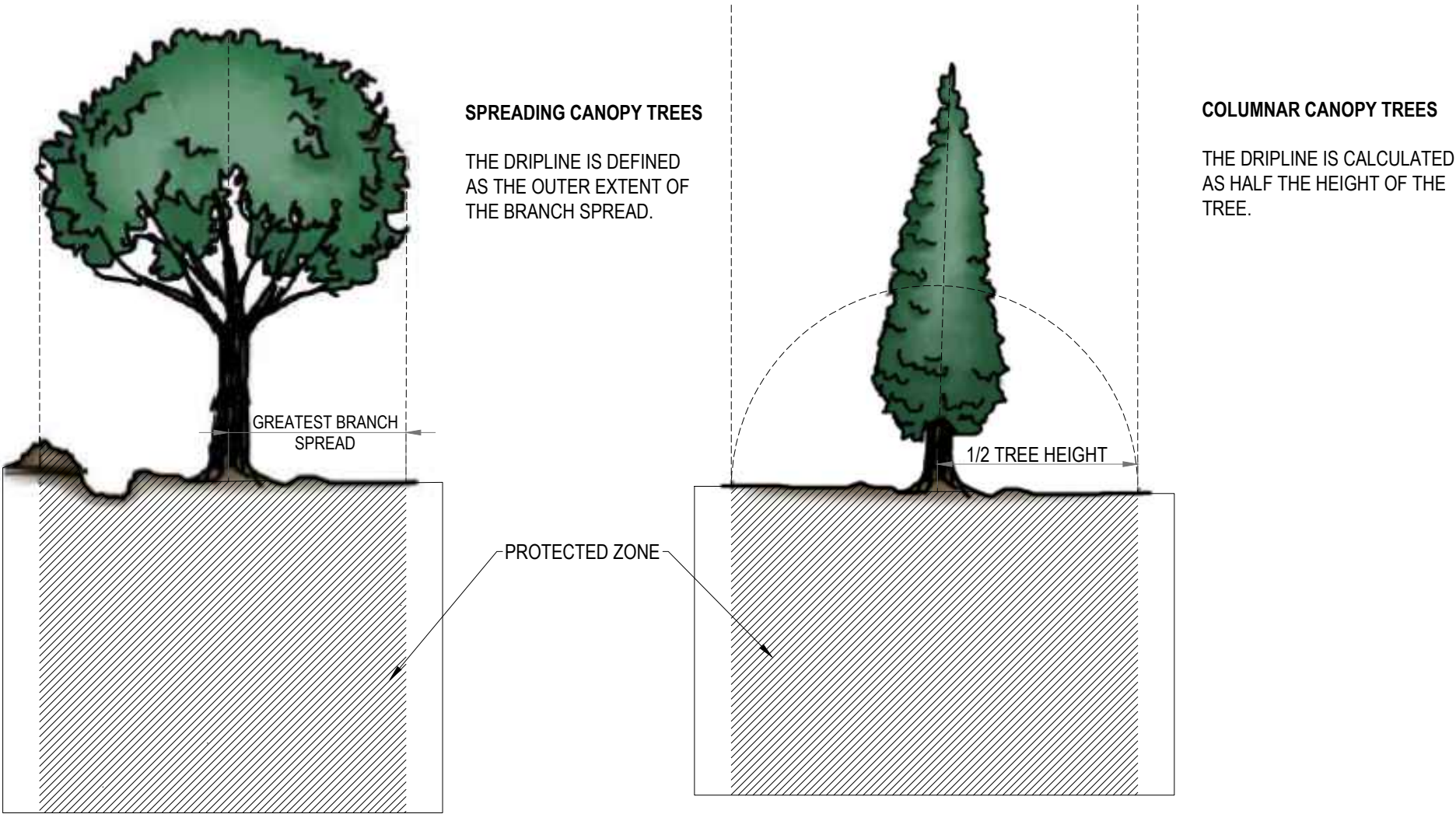
WARNING: PRINTED COPIES ARE UNCONTROLLED



PLOT DETAILS:
Date Plotted: Dec 02, 2021 - 1:13pm
Plotted By: Andrew Lim

File Name: DR07 (2021) Lateral connections.dwg
File Location: C:\USERS\ALIM\ONEDRIVE - WELLINGTON\WATER SERVICES STANDARD DWG\WWL TEMPLATE\EXCEL SHEET LIST





- NOTES:
- 1. IF IN DOUBT ABOUT WHICH TO APPLY, USE WHICHEVER OF THE TWO MEASUREMENTS IS GREATER.
 - 2. WITH IRREGULAR SHAPED TREES (e.g. LEANING TREES), THE DRIPLINE IS CALCULATED BY TAKING THE GREATEST RADIAL SPREAD OF THE CANOPY FROM THE TRUNK IN A FULL CIRCLE AROUND THE TREE.

REV	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	REV	DATE	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	DATE
A	PRELIMINARY ISSUE	AL			03/20				



DESIGN	WWL	-
UPDATE	E GREENBERG	10/21
DRAWING UPDATE	A LIM	10/21
CHECKED	E GREENBERG	11/21
REVIEWED	T STRANG	11/21
APPROVED	T STRANG	11/21

REGIONAL SPECIFICATION FOR WATER SERVICES	
TREE DRIPLINE	

SCALE: NOT TO SCALE	SHEET No. 1 OF 1 SHEETS.
DRAWING SIZE: A1	PROJECT/FILE NUMBER: -
DRAWING N°: DR08	

THIS DRAWING AND ITS CONTENTS ARE THE PROPERTY OF WELLINGTON WATER LIMITED AND ITS CLIENT COUNCILS. ANY REPRODUCTION OR USE, IN FULL OR PART, MUST BE AUTHORISED BY THE OWNER.

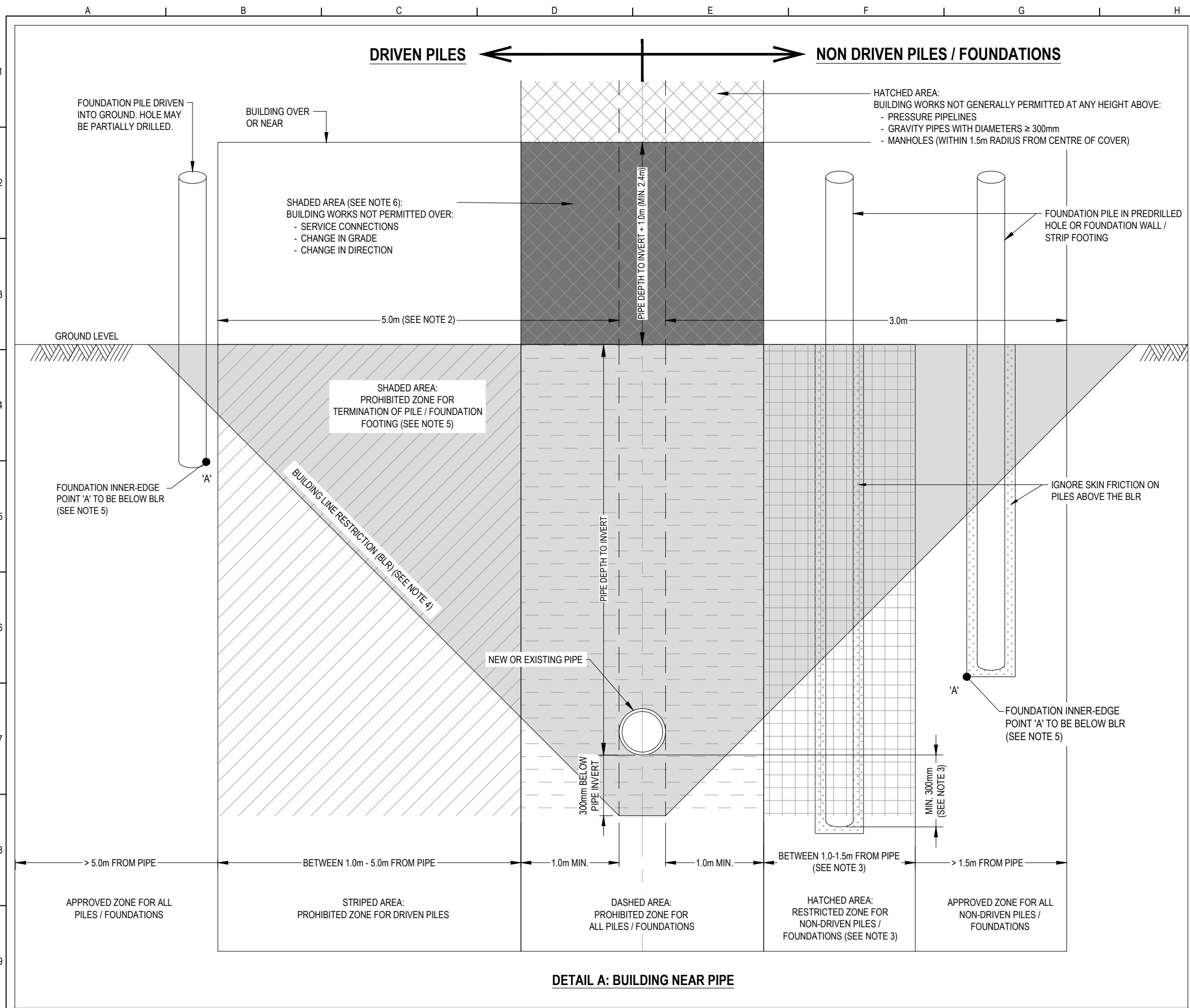
WARNING: PRINTED COPIES ARE UNCONTROLLED



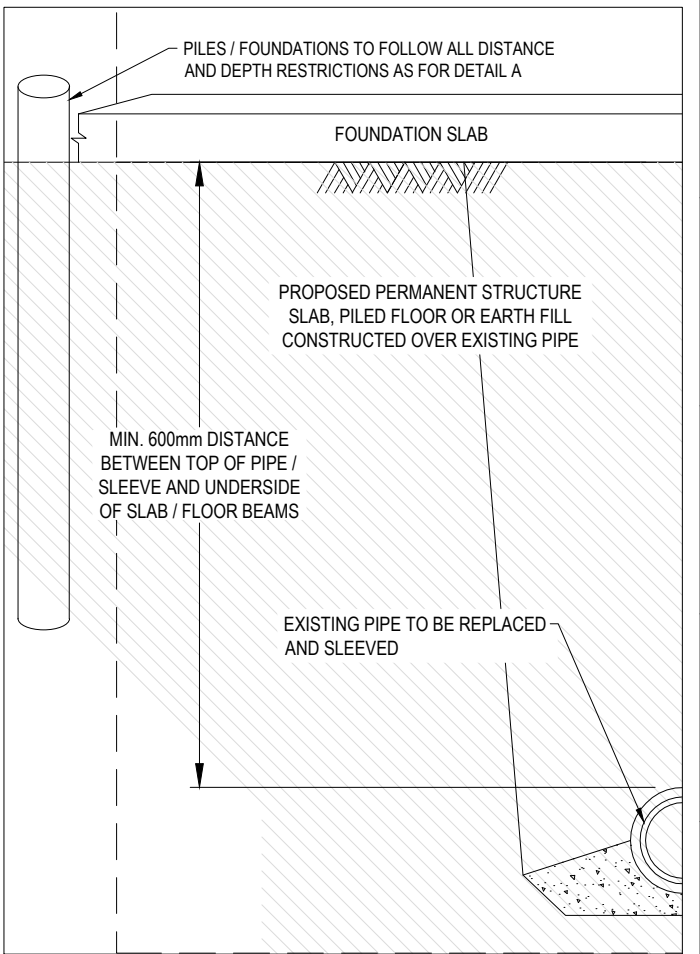
PLOT DETAILS:
Date Plotted: Dec 01, 2021 - 4:54pm
Plotted By: Andrew Lim

File Name: DR08 (2021) Tree dripline.dwg
File Location: C:\USERS\ALIM\ONEDRIVE - WELLINGTON\WATER SERVICES STANDARD DWG\WWL TEMPLATE\DR01-05





DETAIL A: BUILDING NEAR PIPE



DETAIL B: BUILDING OVER PIPES - SLEEVING REQUIREMENTS

NOTES:

1. ALL HORIZONTAL DISTANCES ARE FROM THE OUTSIDE FACE OF THE PIPE / SLEEVE.
2. NO DRIVEN PILES WITHIN 5.0m OF ALL PIPELINES.
3. PILES WITHIN 1.0m - 1.5m FROM THE OUTSIDE OF THE PIPE REQUIRE WRITTEN APPROVAL FROM WELLINGTON WATER, AND MUST TERMINATE MIN. 300mm BELOW THE INVERT OF THE PIPE / SLEEVE.
4. THE ANGLE OF THE BUILDING LINE RESTRICTION (BLR) IS TYPICALLY 45 DEGREES (1H : 1V) FOR COHESIVE SOILS.
5. PILE / FOUNDATION INNER-EDGE POINT 'A' MUST BE BELOW THE BLR.
6. ZONE EXTENDS LONGITUDINALLY ALONG THE PIPE ALIGNMENT FOR A DISTANCE OF 1.0m OR THE DEPTH TO INVERT (WHICHEVER IS GREATER).
7. WRITTEN APPROVAL IS REQUIRED FROM WELLINGTON WATER FOR ANY BUILDING WORK OVER OR NEAR A PUBLIC PIPE. WRITTEN APPROVAL MAY BE WITHHELD IF THE FUNCTION AND OPERABILITY OF THE PUBLIC MAIN ARE UNDULY COMPROMISED BY THE PROPOSAL.

REV	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	DATE	REV	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	DATE
A	PRELIMINARY	AA	AM	02/21					
B	NOTES & LABELS REVISIONS	AA	AM	10/21					
C	REVISED NOTES	JS		07/24					



DESIGN	WWL	-
UPDATE	A McDONALD	10/21
DRAWING UPDATE	A LIM	10/21
CHECKED	E GREENBERG	11/21
REVIEWED	T STRANG	11/21
APPROVED	T STRANG	11/21

REGIONAL SPECIFICATION FOR WATER SERVICES
BUILDING IN CLOSE PROXIMITY

SCALE: NOT TO SCALE	SHEET No. 1 OF 1 SHEETS.
DRAWING SIZE: A1	PROJECT/FILE NUMBER: -
DRAWING N°: DR09	

THIS DRAWING AND ITS CONTENTS ARE THE PROPERTY OF WELLINGTON WATER LIMITED AND ITS CLIENT COUNCILS. ANY REPRODUCTION OR USE, IN FULL OR PART, MUST BE AUTHORISED BY THE OWNER.

WARNING: PRINTED COPIES ARE UNCONTROLLED



PLOT DETAILS:
Date Plotted:
Plotted By: Jack Scott

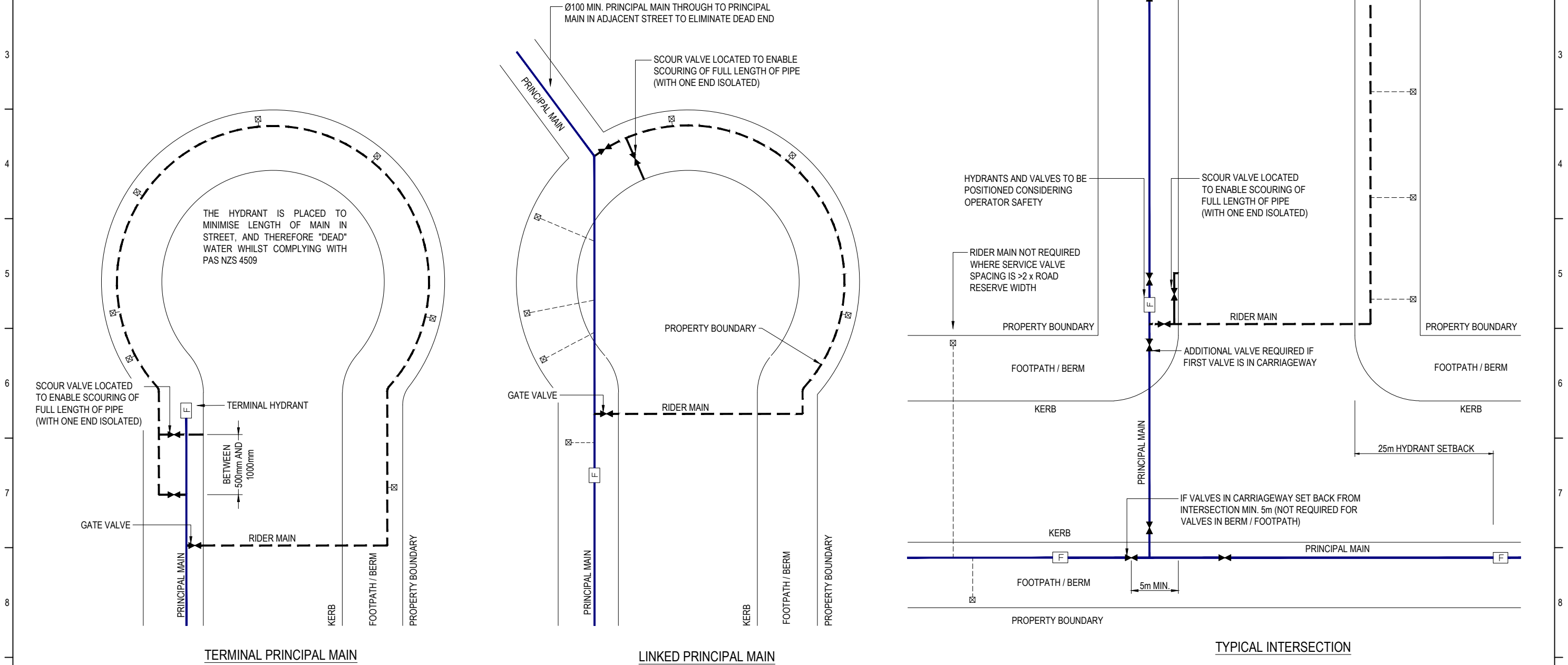
File Name:
File Location: C:\USERS\JACK.SCOTT\ONE DRIVE - WELLINGTON WATER\DOCUMENTS\REGIONAL SPEC DRAWINGS\DRAWINGS - FINAL



NOTE:
1. THE EXAMPLES SHOWN HERE ARE TYPICAL AND MAY VARY DUE TO IN-SITU CIRCUMSTANCE OR CHANGE IN COUNCIL POLICY.

SERVICES LEGEND

PRINCIPAL MAIN	
RIDER MAIN	
HYDRANT	
SERVICE VALVE	
GATE VALVE / SCOUR VALVE	



REV	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	REV	DATE	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	DATE
A	PRELIMINARY ISSUE	AL	EG		02/20				
B	SCOUR VALVES ON RIDER MAINS	AL	EG		11/21				



DESIGN	WWL	-
UPDATE	E GREENBERG	10/21
DRAWING UPDATE	A LIM	10/21
CHECKED	E GREENBERG	11/21
REVIEWED	K WYNN	11/21
APPROVED	K WYNN	11/21

REGIONAL SPECIFICATION FOR WATER SERVICES

TYPICAL WATER RETICULATION LAYOUT

SCALE: NOT TO SCALE	SHEET No. 1 OF 1 SHEETS.
DRAWING SIZE: A1	PROJECT/FILE NUMBER:
DRAWING N°: WS01	

THIS DRAWING AND ITS CONTENTS ARE THE PROPERTY OF WELLINGTON WATER LIMITED AND ITS CLIENT COUNCILS. ANY REPRODUCTION OR USE, IN FULL OR PART, MUST BE AUTHORISED BY THE OWNER.

WARNING: PRINTED COPIES ARE UNCONTROLLED



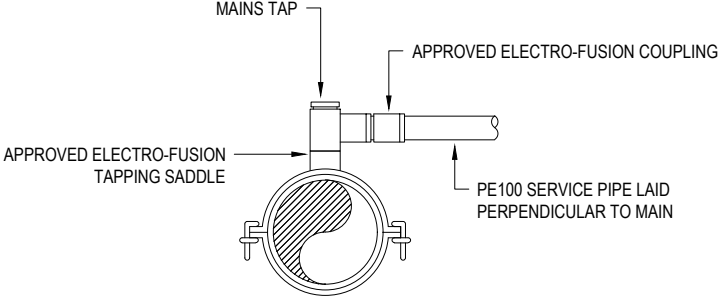
PLOT DETAILS:
Date Plotted: Dec 02, 2021 - 1:27pm
Plotted By: Andrew Lim

File Name: WS01 (2021) water reticulation layout.dwg
File Location: C:\USERS\ALIM\ONEDRIVE - WELLINGTON\WATER\007 WWL\WWL\WATER SERVICES STANDARD DWG\WWL TEMPLATE\WS01-08

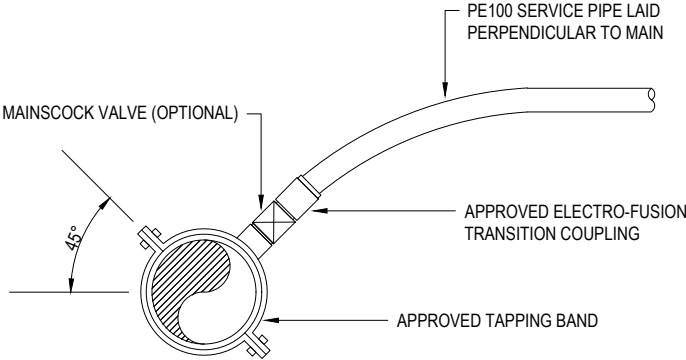


A B C D E F G H I J

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9



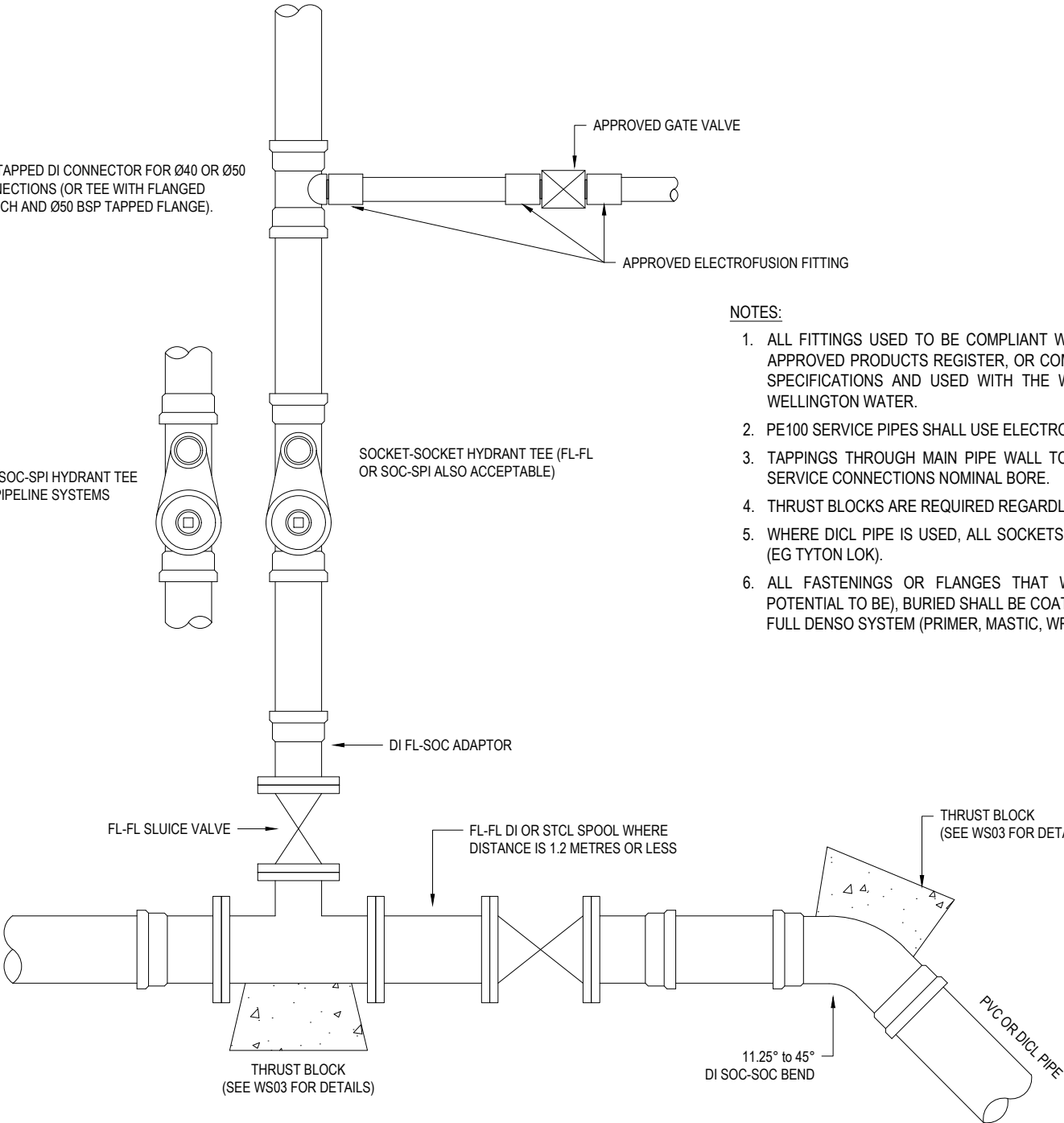
TYPICAL TAPPING TO PE PIPE



TYPICAL TAPPING TO PVC/DICL PIPE

PRE-TAPPED DI CONNECTOR FOR Ø40 OR Ø50 CONNECTIONS (OR TEE WITH FLANGED BRANCH AND Ø50 BSP TAPPED FLANGE).

OPTIONAL SOC-SPI HYDRANT TEE FOR DICL PIPELINE SYSTEMS



TYPICAL PVC OR DICL PIPE CONNECTIONS ≤ DN200

- NOTES:
1. ALL FITTINGS USED TO BE COMPLIANT WITH WELLINGTON WATER APPROVED PRODUCTS REGISTER, OR COMPLIANT WITH TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS AND USED WITH THE WRITTEN PERMISSION OF WELLINGTON WATER.
 2. PE100 SERVICE PIPES SHALL USE ELECTRO-FUSION FITTINGS.
 3. TAPPINGS THROUGH MAIN PIPE WALL TO BE SAME DIAMETER AS SERVICE CONNECTIONS NOMINAL BORE.
 4. THRUST BLOCKS ARE REQUIRED REGARDLESS OF JOINT TYPE.
 5. WHERE DICL PIPE IS USED, ALL SOCKETS SHALL HAVE GRIP RINGS (EG TYTON LOK).
 6. ALL FASTENINGS OR FLANGES THAT WILL BE (OR HAVE THE POTENTIAL TO BE), BURIED SHALL BE COATED AND WRAPPED IN THE FULL DENSO SYSTEM (PRIMER, MASTIC, WRAP AND OVER WRAP).

REV	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	REV	DATE	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	DATE
A	PRELIMINARY ISSUE	AL			02/20				
B	REVISIONS	AL	EG		10/21				



DESIGN	WWL	-
UPDATE	C WANG	10/21
DRAWING UPDATE	A LIM	10/21
CHECKED	E GREENBERG	11/21
REVIEWED	K WYNN	12/21
APPROVED	K WYNN	12/21

REGIONAL SPECIFICATION FOR WATER SERVICES

TYPICAL WATER DISTRIBUTION PIPE
JUNCTIONS AND CONNECTIONS

SCALE: NOT TO SCALE	SHEET No. 1 OF 1 SHEETS.
DRAWING SIZE: A1	PROJECT/FILE NUMBER: -
DRAWING N°: WS02	

THIS DRAWING AND ITS CONTENTS ARE THE PROPERTY OF WELLINGTON WATER LIMITED AND ITS CLIENT COUNCILS. ANY REPRODUCTION OR USE, IN FULL OR PART, MUST BE AUTHORISED BY THE OWNER.

WARNING: PRINTED COPIES ARE UNCONTROLLED



PLOT DETAILS:
Date Plotted: Dec 09, 2021 - 7:56pm
Plotted By: Andrew Lim

File Name: WS02 (2021) Water distribution pipe junctions and connections.dwg
File Location: C:\USERS\ALIM\ONEDRIVE - WELLINGTON\WATER\007 WWL\WWL\WATER SERVICES STANDARD DWG\WWL TEMPLATE\WS01-08



NOTES:

- THRUST BLOCKS TO BE POURED AGAINST FIRM, CLEAR AND UNDISTURBED NATIVE GROUND.
- THRUST BLOCKS FOR PIPES >DN300 TO BE SPECIFICALLY DESIGNED.
- MINIMUM BEARING AREAS MAY BE INCREASED PRO-RATA FOR INCREASED TEST PRESSURES.
- THRUST BLOCK VOLUMES ARE FOR A 1600kPa TEST PRESSURE. ADJUST VOLUMES FOR HIGHER TEST PRESSURES.
- MINIMUM COVER TO PIPE CROWN SHALL BE 600mm, OR SPECIFIC DESIGN IS REQUIRED.
- SHALL NOT BE PLACED UNDER WORKING OR TEST LOAD FOR AT LEAST 3 DAYS AFTER POURING. WHERE THIS IS UNAVAILABLE, TOMMING WITH TIMBER STRUTS TO PROVIDE IMMEDIATE THRUST RESTRAINT IS ALLOWABLE IF APPROVED BY WELLINGTON WATER.
- THRUST BLOCKS ARE NOT REQUIRED ON PE PRESSURE PIPELINES AT CHANGES OF DIRECTION, TEES AND CHANGES IN PIPE DIAMETER UNLESS SPECIFICALLY REQUIRED BY THE DESIGNER.
- PRECAST THRUST BLOCKS MAY BE PERMITTED, REFER TO SECTION 6.3.6.3 OF THE REGIONAL SPECIFICATION.
- A PROTECTIVE POLYTHENE MEMBRANE IS REQUIRED BETWEEN THE FITTING AND THE THRUST BLOCK TO PREVENT ABRASIVE DAMAGE TO THE WATER MAIN.
- ALL FASTENINGS OR FLANGES THAT WILL BE (OR HAVE THE POTENTIAL TO BE) BURIED SHALL BE COATED AND WRAPPED IN THE FULL DENSO SYSTEM (PRIMER, MASTIC, WRAP AND OVER WRAP).
- THE BEARING PRESSURE OF THE SOIL SHALL BE CHECKED TO ENSURE IT HAS THE MINIMUM REQUIRED BEARING STRENGTH AS SPECIFIED IN THE DESIGN.
- THE WATER TABLE IS ASSUMED TO BE BELOW THE BASE OF THE THRUST BLOCK. IF THIS ASSUMPTION DOES NOT APPLY, A CHARTERED ENGINEER MUST BE ENGAGED TO DESIGN THE BLOCK.

MINIMUM BEARING AREA (m²) FOR PN16 PIPES					
ASSUMED TEST PRESSURE 1600 kPa, ASSUMED HORIZONTAL SOIL BEARING PRESSURE 75kPa					
PIPE DN	11.25° BEND	22.5° BEND	45° BEND	90° BEND	END CAP / TEE / INLINE
Ø100	0.1	0.2	0.3	0.5	0.4
Ø150	0.2	0.3	0.6	1.1	0.8
Ø200	0.3	0.5	1.0	1.9	1.4
Ø300	0.6	1.2	2.3	4.2	3.0

VALUES IN THE TABLE ABOVE INCLUDE, FACTOR OF SAFETY = 1.5

THE FOLLOWING FORMULAE CAN BE USED TO CALCULATE MIN. BEARING AREAS:

FOR BENDS = $\frac{AP2\sin(\theta/2)SF}{SBP}$ m²

FOR END CAPS / TEES = $\frac{APSF}{SBP}$ m²

WHERE:

A = AREA OF PIPE (m² : USING OUTSIDE DIA. OF PIPE)

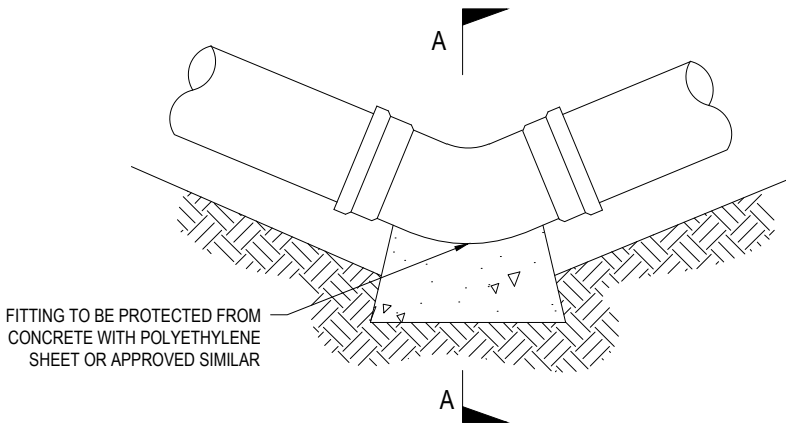
P = TEST PRESSURE OF PIPE (kPa)

θ = ANGLE OF BEND

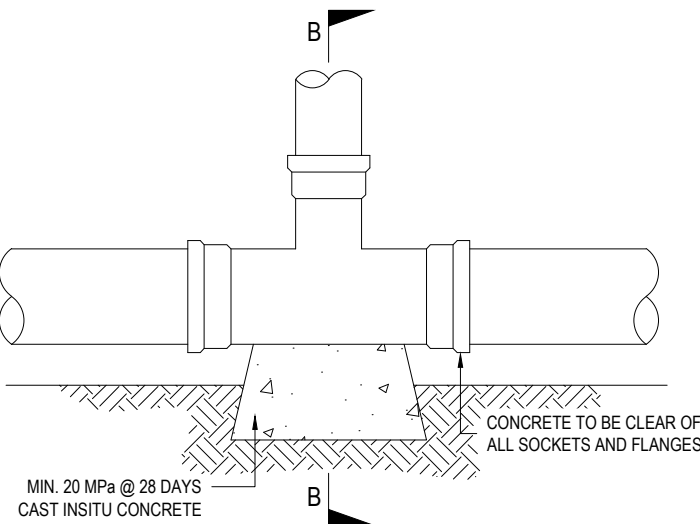
SBP = SAFE BEARING PRESSURE OF IN SITU SOIL (kPa)

SF = FACTOR OF SAFETY, 1.5

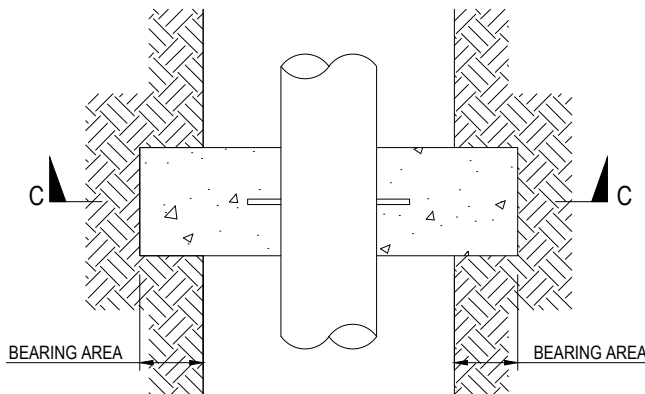
ALLOWABLE BEARING PRESSURE		
VERTICAL BEARING PRESSURE (kPa) OF SOIL FOR PIPE ≤DN 300 MEASURED USING A SCALA PENETROMETER		
BLOWS PER 100 mm	VERTICAL BEARING PRESSURE (kPa)	HORIZONTAL BEARING PRESSURE (kPa)
2	65	32.5
3	100	50
5	150	75
7	200	100



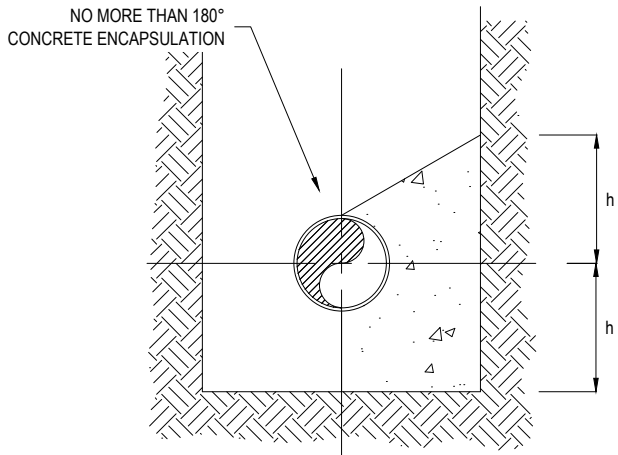
TYPICAL THRUST BLOCK DETAIL ON BENDS - PLAN VIEW



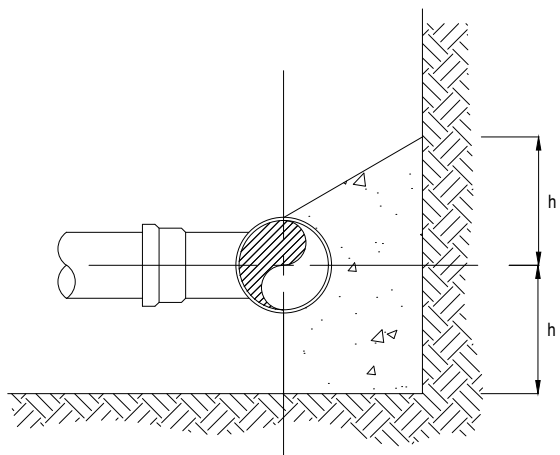
TYPICAL THRUST BLOCK DETAIL ON TEE - PLAN VIEW



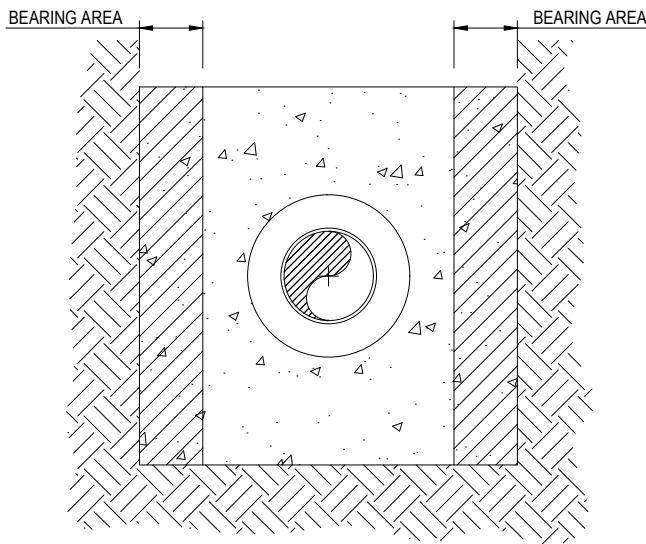
TYPICAL IN-LINE THRUST BLOCK DETAIL - PLAN VIEW



SECTION A-A



SECTION B-B



SECTION C-C

REV	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	REV	DATE	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	DATE
A	PRELIMINARY ISSUE	AL			02/20				
B	TABLE AND DETAILS UPDATE	AL			11/21				
C	NOTES AND TABLES REVISION	JS			07/24				



DESIGN	WWL	-
UPDATE	C WANG	10/21
DRAWING UPDATE	A LIM	10/21
CHECKED	E GREENBERG	11/21
REVIEWED	K WYNN	12/21
APPROVED	K WYNN	12/21

REGIONAL SPECIFICATION FOR WATER SERVICES

TYPICAL THRUST BLOCK DETAILS

SCALE: NOT TO SCALE

SHEET No. 1
OF 1 SHEETS.

DRAWING SIZE: A1

DRAWING N°:
WS03

PROJECT/FILE NUMBER:

© COPYRIGHT: THIS DRAWING AND ITS CONTENTS ARE THE PROPERTY OF WELLINGTON WATER LIMITED AND ITS CLIENT COUNCILS. ANY REPRODUCTION OR USE, IN FULL OR PART, MUST BE AUTHORISED BY THE OWNER.



WARNING: PRINTED COPIES ARE UNCONTROLLED



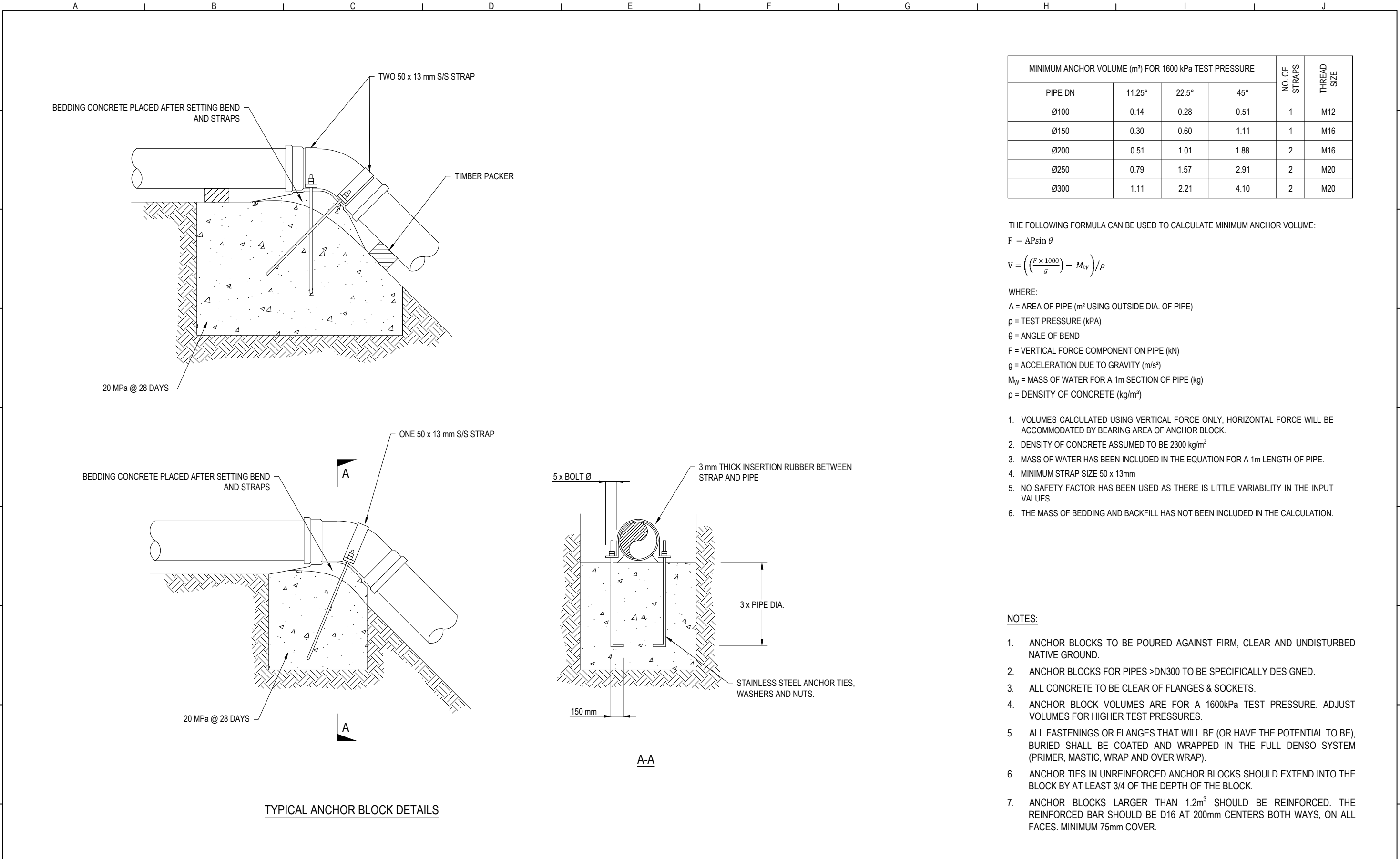
PLOT DETAILS:

Date Plotted: 
Plotted By: Jack Scott

File Name: 

File Location: C:\USERS\JACK.SCOTT\ONE DRIVE - WELLINGTON WATER\DOCUMENTS\REGIONAL SPEC DRAWINGS\DRAWINGS - FINAL

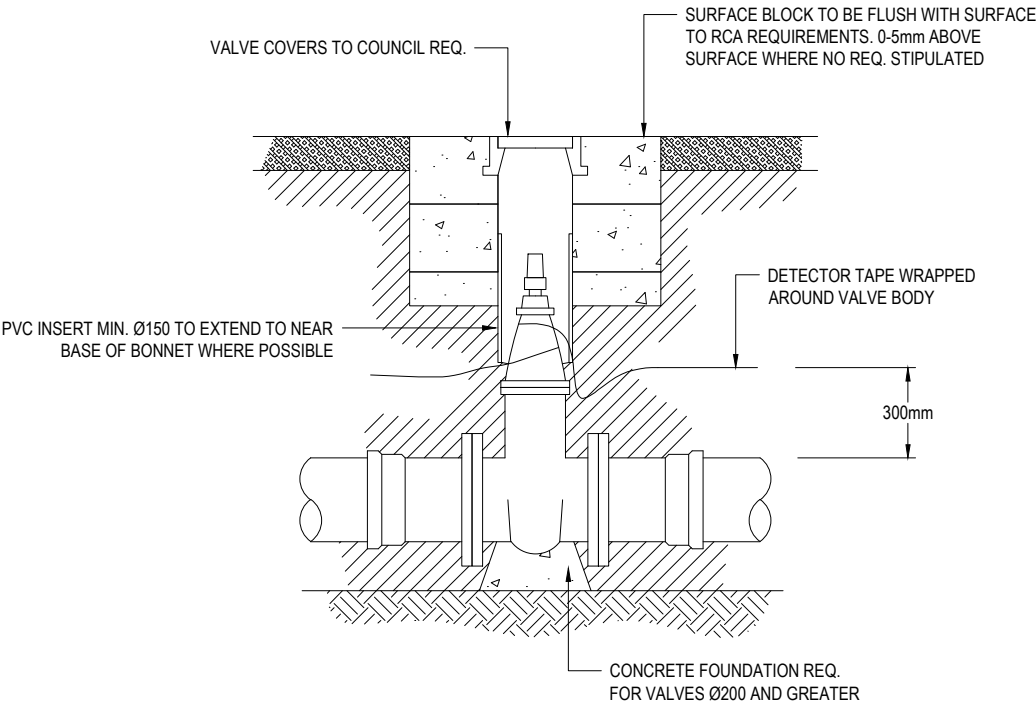




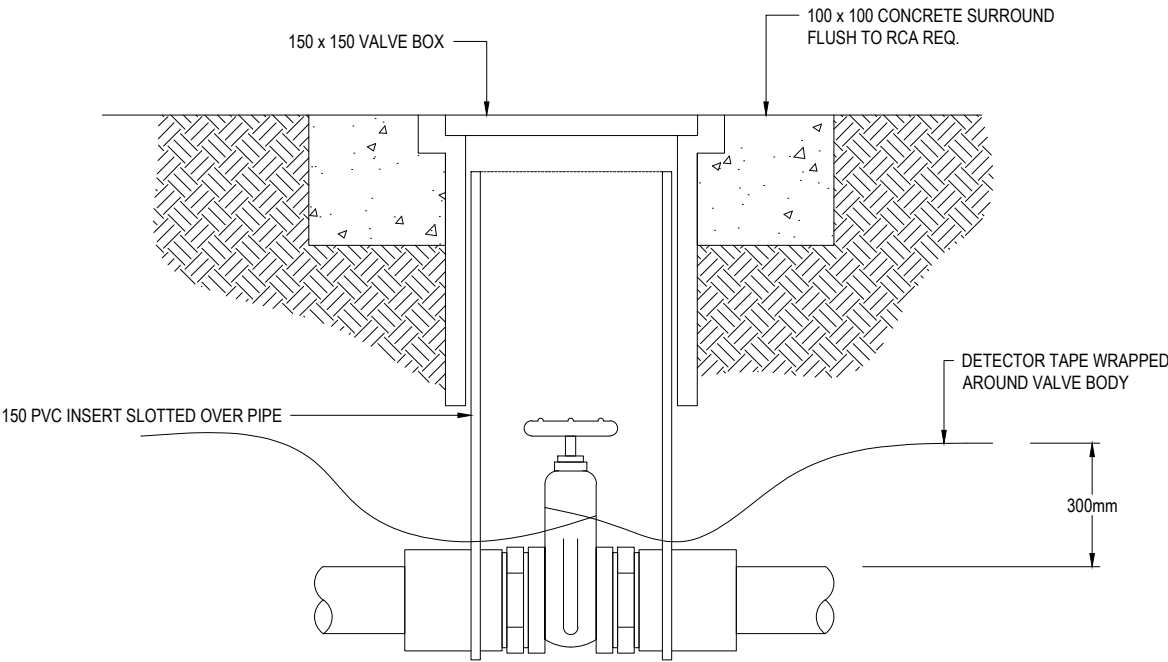
REV	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	REV	DATE	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	DATE	DESIGN	WWL	-	REGIONAL SPECIFICATION FOR WATER SERVICES	SCALE: NOT TO SCALE	SHEET No. 1
A	PRELIMINARY ISSUE	AL			02/20					UPDATE	A PAWSON	11/21			OF 1 SHEETS.
B	CALCULATION FOR 1600 kPa AND ADDITIONAL NOTES	AL	AP		11/21					DRAWING UPDATE	A LIM	11/21	TYPICAL ANCHOR BLOCK DETAILS	DRAWING SIZE: A1	PROJECT/FILE NUMBER:
										CHECKED	E GREENBERG	11/21			
										REVIEWED	J EWEG	11/21			
										APPROVED	K WYNN	11/21			

NOTES:

1. NOMINAL DEPTH OF BETWEEN 100 AND 350mm FROM GROUND LEVEL TO TOP OF GATE VALVE SPINDLE CAP.
2. METALLIC DETECTOR / WARNING TAPE TO BE LAID 300mm ABOVE ALL BULK, TRUNK, PRINCIPAL AND RIDER MAIN PIPES AND 100mm ABOVE SERVICE PIPES AND CONTINUE THROUGH VALVE ENCLOSURE WHILST MAINTAINING TAPE CONDUCTIVITY.
3. THRUST BLOCKS MAY BE REQUIRED FOR VALVES TO SECURE AGAINST LATERAL THRUST WHEN VALVE CLOSED AND MAIN IS DRAINED ON ONE SIDE OF THE VALVE. REFER TO WS14 AND WS03.
4. ALL VALVES SHALL INCLUDE A TAG OR OTHER MEANS TO CLEARLY INDICATE CLOSING DIRECTION.
5. ALL FASTENINGS OR FLANGES THAT WILL BE (OR HAVE THE POTENTIAL TO BE), BURIED SHALL BE COATED AND WRAPPED IN THE FULL DENSO SYSTEM (PRIMER, MASTIC, WRAP AND OVER WRAP).



GATE VALVES
Ø80 AND ABOVE



GATE VALVES Ø50 OR LESS

REV	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	REV	DATE	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	DATE
A	PRELIMINARY ISSUE	AL			02/20				
B	REVISED NOTES	AL	EG		11/21				



DESIGN	WWL	-
UPDATE	E GREENBERG	10/21
DRAWING UPDATE	A LIM	10/21
CHECKED	E GREENBERG	11/21
REVIEWED	K WYNN	12/21
APPROVED	K WYNN	12/21

REGIONAL SPECIFICATION FOR WATER SERVICES
TYPICAL VALVE DETAILS

SCALE: NOT TO SCALE	SHEET No. 1 OF 1 SHEETS.
DRAWING SIZE: A1	PROJECT/FILE NUMBER: -
DRAWING N°: WS05	

© COPYRIGHT: THIS DRAWING AND ITS CONTENTS ARE THE PROPERTY OF WELLINGTON WATER LIMITED AND ITS CLIENT COUNCILS. ANY REPRODUCTION OR USE, IN FULL OR PART, MUST BE AUTHORISED BY THE OWNER.

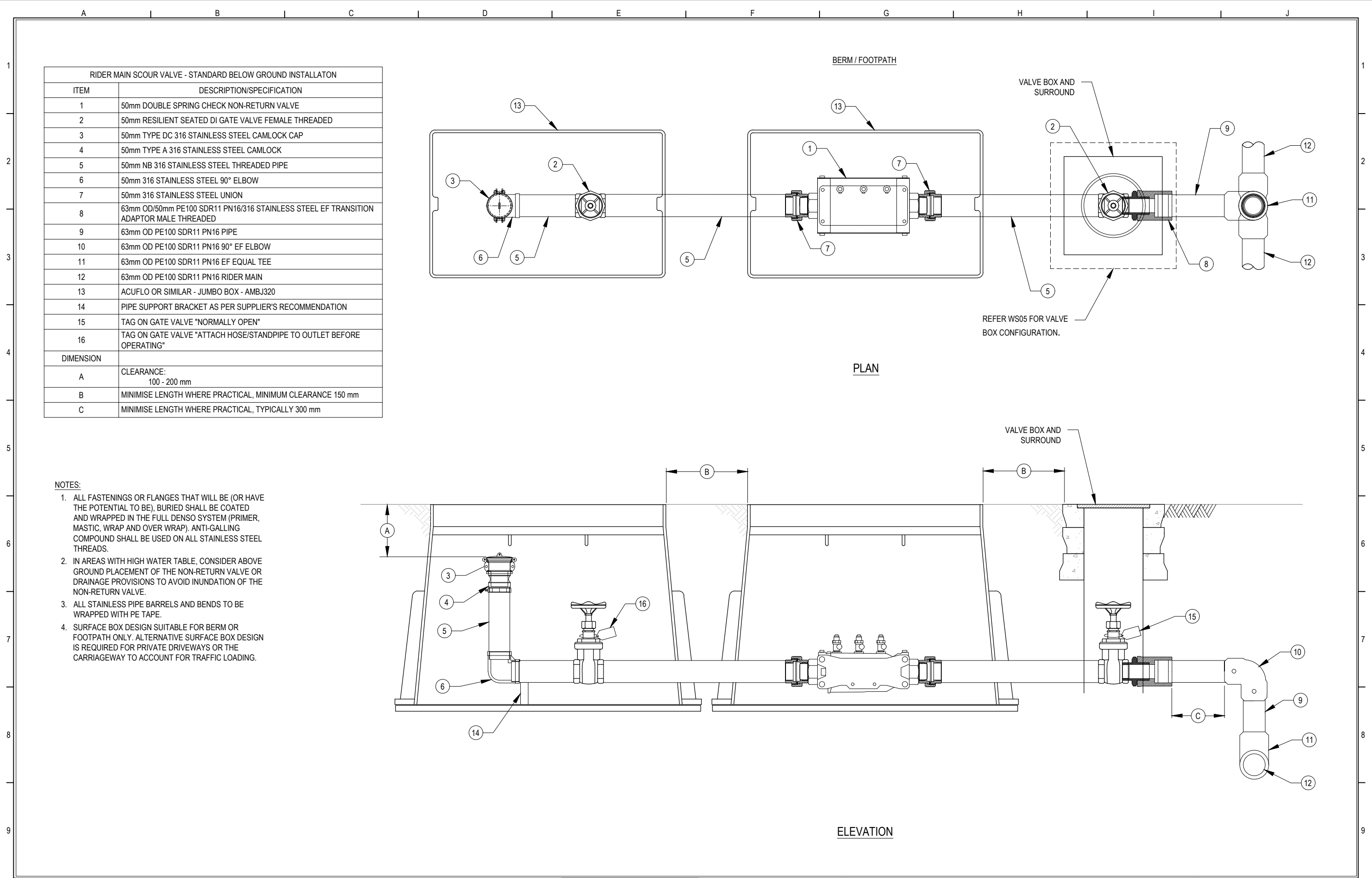
WARNING: PRINTED COPIES ARE UNCONTROLLED



PLOT DETAILS:
Date Plotted: Dec 09, 2021 - 8:22pm
Plotted By: Andrew Lim

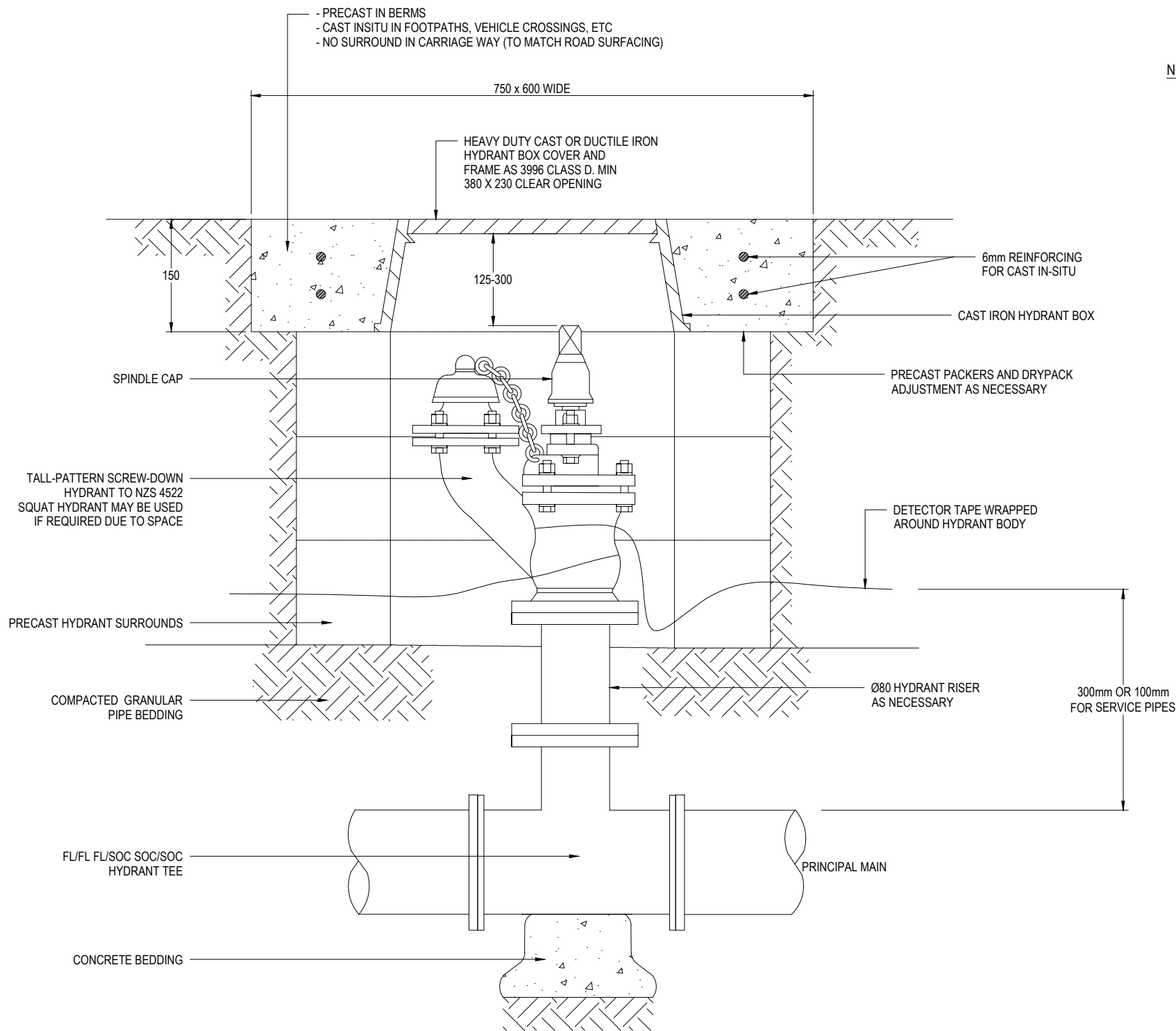
File Name: WS05 (2021) Typical valve details.dwg
File Location: C:\USERS\ALIM\ONEDRIVE - WELLINGTON\WATER SERVICES STANDARD DWG\WWL TEMPLATE\WS01-08





RIDER MAIN SCOUR VALVE - STANDARD BELOW GROUND INSTALLATON	
ITEM	DESCRIPTION/SPECIFICATION
1	50mm DOUBLE SPRING CHECK NON-RETURN VALVE
2	50mm RESILIENT SEATED DI GATE VALVE FEMALE THREADED
3	50mm TYPE DC 316 STAINLESS STEEL CAMLOCK CAP
4	50mm TYPE A 316 STAINLESS STEEL CAMLOCK
5	50mm NB 316 STAINLESS STEEL THREADED PIPE
6	50mm 316 STAINLESS STEEL 90° ELBOW
7	50mm 316 STAINLESS STEEL UNION
8	63mm OD/50mm PE100 SDR11 PN16/316 STAINLESS STEEL EF TRANSITION ADAPTOR MALE THREADED
9	63mm OD PE100 SDR11 PN16 PIPE
10	63mm OD PE100 SDR11 PN16 90° EF ELBOW
11	63mm OD PE100 SDR11 PN16 EF EQUAL TEE
12	63mm OD PE100 SDR11 PN16 RIDER MAIN
13	ACUFLO OR SIMILAR - JUMBO BOX - AMBJ320
14	PIPE SUPPORT BRACKET AS PER SUPPLIER'S RECOMMENDATION
15	TAG ON GATE VALVE "NORMALLY OPEN"
16	TAG ON GATE VALVE "ATTACH HOSE/STANDPIPE TO OUTLET BEFORE OPERATING"
DIMENSION	
A	CLEARANCE: 100 - 200 mm
B	MINIMISE LENGTH WHERE PRACTICAL, MINIMUM CLEARANCE 150 mm
C	MINIMISE LENGTH WHERE PRACTICAL, TYPICALLY 300 mm

- NOTES:
- ALL FASTENINGS OR FLANGES THAT WILL BE (OR HAVE THE POTENTIAL TO BE), BURIED SHALL BE COATED AND WRAPPED IN THE FULL DENSO SYSTEM (PRIMER, MASTIC, WRAP AND OVER WRAP). ANTI-GALLING COMPOUND SHALL BE USED ON ALL STAINLESS STEEL THREADS.
 - IN AREAS WITH HIGH WATER TABLE, CONSIDER ABOVE GROUND PLACEMENT OF THE NON-RETURN VALVE OR DRAINAGE PROVISIONS TO AVOID INUNDATION OF THE NON-RETURN VALVE.
 - ALL STAINLESS PIPE BARRELS AND BENDS TO BE WRAPPED WITH PE TAPE.
 - SURFACE BOX DESIGN SUITABLE FOR BERM OR FOOTPATH ONLY. ALTERNATIVE SURFACE BOX DESIGN IS REQUIRED FOR PRIVATE DRIVEWAYS OR THE CARRIAGEWAY TO ACCOUNT FOR TRAFFIC LOADING.



NOTES:

1. MARKING OF HYDRANTS SHALL INCLUDE THE HYDRANT BOX LID, ANY CONCRETE SURROUND AND REQUIRED ROAD MARKINGS.
2. METALLIC DETECTOR / WARNING TAPE TO BE LAID 200 TO 300mm ABOVE ALL BULK, TRUNK, PRINCIPAL AND RIDER MAIN PIPES AND 100mm ABOVE SERVICE PIPES, AND CONTINUE THROUGH HYDRANT ENCLOSURE WHILST MAINTAINING TAP CONDUCTIVITY.
3. ALL FASTENINGS OR FLANGES THAT WILL BE (OR HAVE THE POTENTIAL TO BE), BURIED SHALL BE COATED AND WRAPPED IN THE FULL DENSO SYSTEM (PRIMER, MASTIC, WRAP AND OVER WRAP).

REV	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	REV	DATE	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	DATE
A	PRELIMINARY ISSUE	AL			02/20				



DESIGN	WWL	-
UPDATE	E GREENBERG	10/21
DRAWING UPDATE	A LIM	10/21
CHECKED	E GREENBERG	11/21
REVIEWED	K WYNN	11/21
APPROVED	K WYNN	11/21

REGIONAL SPECIFICATION FOR WATER SERVICES	
FIRE HYDRANT BOX	

SCALE: NOT TO SCALE	SHEET No. 1 OF 1 SHEETS.
DRAWING SIZE: A1	PROJECT/FILE NUMBER:
DRAWING N°: WS07	

THIS DRAWING AND ITS CONTENTS ARE THE PROPERTY OF WELLINGTON WATER LIMITED AND ITS CLIENT COUNCILS. ANY REPRODUCTION OR USE, IN FULL OR PART, MUST BE AUTHORISED BY THE OWNER.

WARNING: PRINTED COPIES ARE UNCONTROLLED



PLOT DETAILS:
Date Plotted: Dec 08, 2021 - 9:25am
Plotted By: Andrew Lim

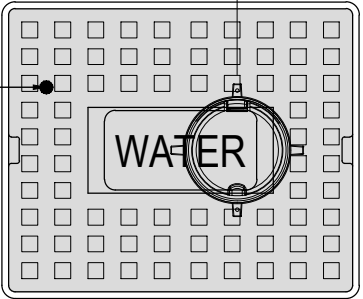
File Name: WS07 (2021) Fire hydrant box.dwg
File Location: C:\USERS\ALIM\ONEDRIVE - WELLINGTON\WATER SERVICES STANDARD DWG\WWL TEMPLATE\WS01-08



NOTES:

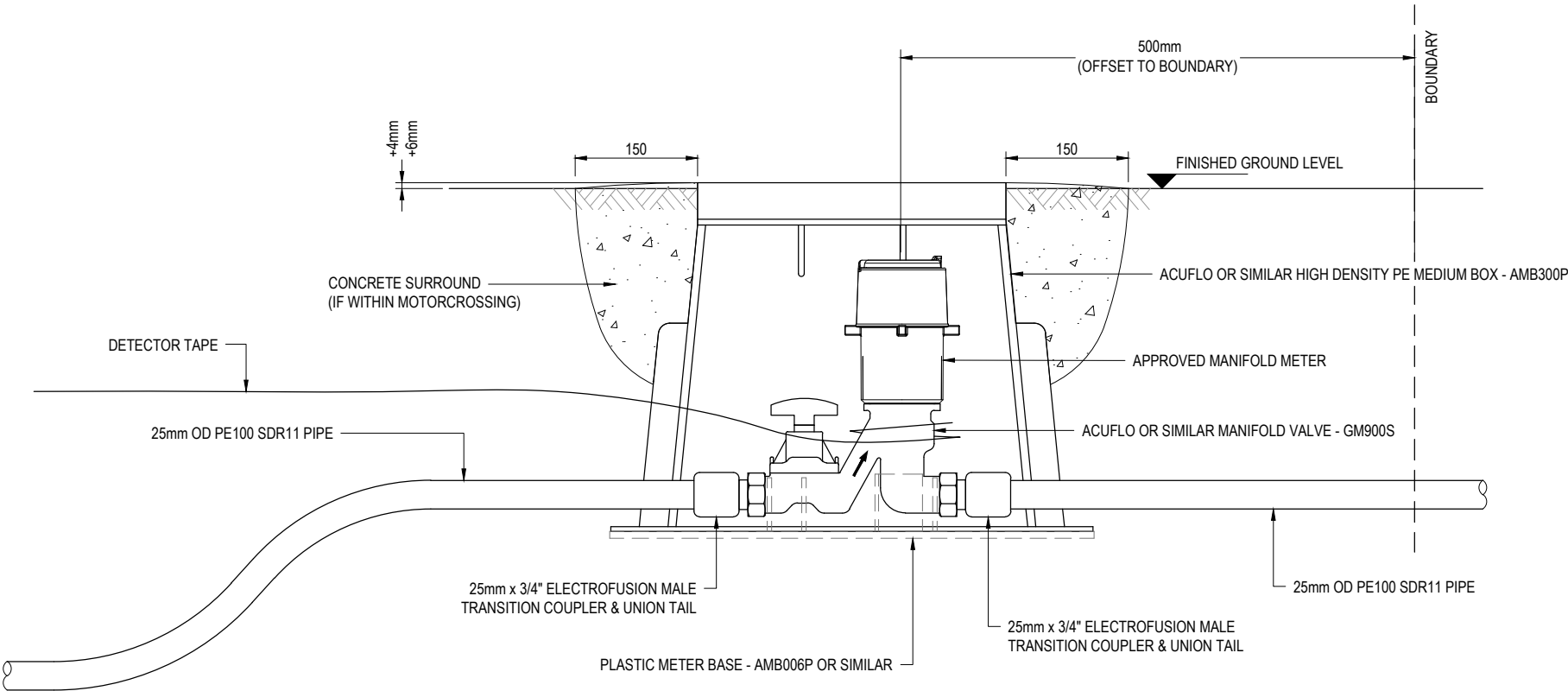
1. VALVE AND METER SHALL BE LOCATED IN THE ROAD RESERVE ADJACENT TO THE STREET BOUNDARY OF THE PROPERTY SERVICED AS PER THE REQUIREMENTS OF THE REGIONAL STANDARD FOR WATER SERVICES.
2. VALVE BOX SHALL BE ARRANGED AT RIGHT ANGLES TO THE PROPERTY BOUNDARY.
3. VALVE BOX SHALL HAVE PLASTIC BASE CORRECTLY INSTALLED AND FITTED.
4. SERVICE VALVE (OR METER) SHOULD NOT BE LOCATED IN DRIVEWAYS OR AREAS WHERE VEHICLE TRAFFIC IS LIKELY WITHOUT CONSIDERATION OF MINIMUM TRAFFIC LOADING REQUIREMENTS.
5. WHERE THE SERVICE VALVE CANNOT BE INSTALLED OUTSIDE OF THE DRIVEWAY, AND A HIGH DENSITY PE SURFACE BOX IS USED, IT SHALL BE SET WITH A 20MPa CONCRETE SURROUND A MINIMUM 100mm THICK AND 150mm WIDE. ADEQUATE CARE MUST BE TAKEN BY THE INSTALLER FOR THE CONCRETE SURROUND NOT TO AFFECT THE SAFE OPENING AND CLOSING OF THE BOX LID.
6. THE TOP SURFACE OF THE CONCRETE SURROUND SHALL:
 - FALL 4-6mm TO PROVIDE POSITIVE DRAINAGE AWAY FROM THE BOX.
 - BE SQUARED WITHIN FORMWORK AND BE NEAT AND TIDY.
 - BE TROWELLED TO BE FLUSH WITH THE TOP OF THE BOX.
 - HAVE A BROOMED FINISH WHEN NOT IN THE CBD.
 - HAVE AN EXPOSED AGGREGATE FINISH WHEN IN THE CBD.
7. FOR NEW CONNECTIONS, A MINIMUM OF 1m SERVICE PIPE SHALL BE PROVIDED INSIDE THE BOUNDARY ON THE CUSTOMER SIDE OF THE MANIFOLD. THIS SERVICE SHALL BE SECURE PLUGGED.
8. DETECTOR TAPE TO BE INSTALLED ABOVE SERVICE PIPE ARRANGEMENT, UP TO THE SERVICE VALVE BOX.
9. CUT 'V' IN KERB TO MARK LOCATION OF THE SERVICE VALVE.
10. WHERE INSTALLATION CONFLICTS WITH LOCAL COUNCIL BYLAWS, THE BYLAWS TAKE PRECEDENCE. APPROVAL MUST BE OBTAINED PRIOR TO CONSTRUCTION FROM WELLINGTON WATER.

POLYPROPYLENE LID - AMB004P
OR SIMILAR



PLAN

NOT TO SCALE



SECTIONAL ELEVATION

NOT TO SCALE

REV	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	REV	DATE	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	DATE
A	PRELIMINARY ISSUE	SS	CB	GC	03/20				
B	REVISED TABLE AND NOTES	AL	DM	GC	07/20				
C	REVISED NOTES AND LABELS	AL	SS		10/21				
D	REVISED NOTES	JS			07/24				



DESIGN	T BIAGIOLI	09/19
UPDATE	S SURESH	10/21
DRAWING UPDATE	A LIM	10/21
CHECKED	E GREENBERG	11/21
REVIEWED	K WYNN	11/21
APPROVED	K WYNN	11/21

REGIONAL SPECIFICATION FOR WATER SERVICES

TYPICAL DOMESTIC MANIFOLD AND WATER METER

SCALE: NOT TO SCALE	SHEET No. 1 OF 1 SHEETS.
DRAWING SIZE: A1	PROJECT/FILE NUMBER: -
DRAWING N°: WS08	

© COPYRIGHT: THIS DRAWING AND ITS CONTENTS ARE THE PROPERTY OF WELLINGTON WATER LIMITED AND ITS CLIENT COUNCILS. ANY REPRODUCTION OR USE, IN FULL OR PART, MUST BE AUTHORISED BY THE OWNER.

WARNING: PRINTED COPIES ARE UNCONTROLLED



PLOT DETAILS:
Date Plotted:
Plotted By: Jack Scott

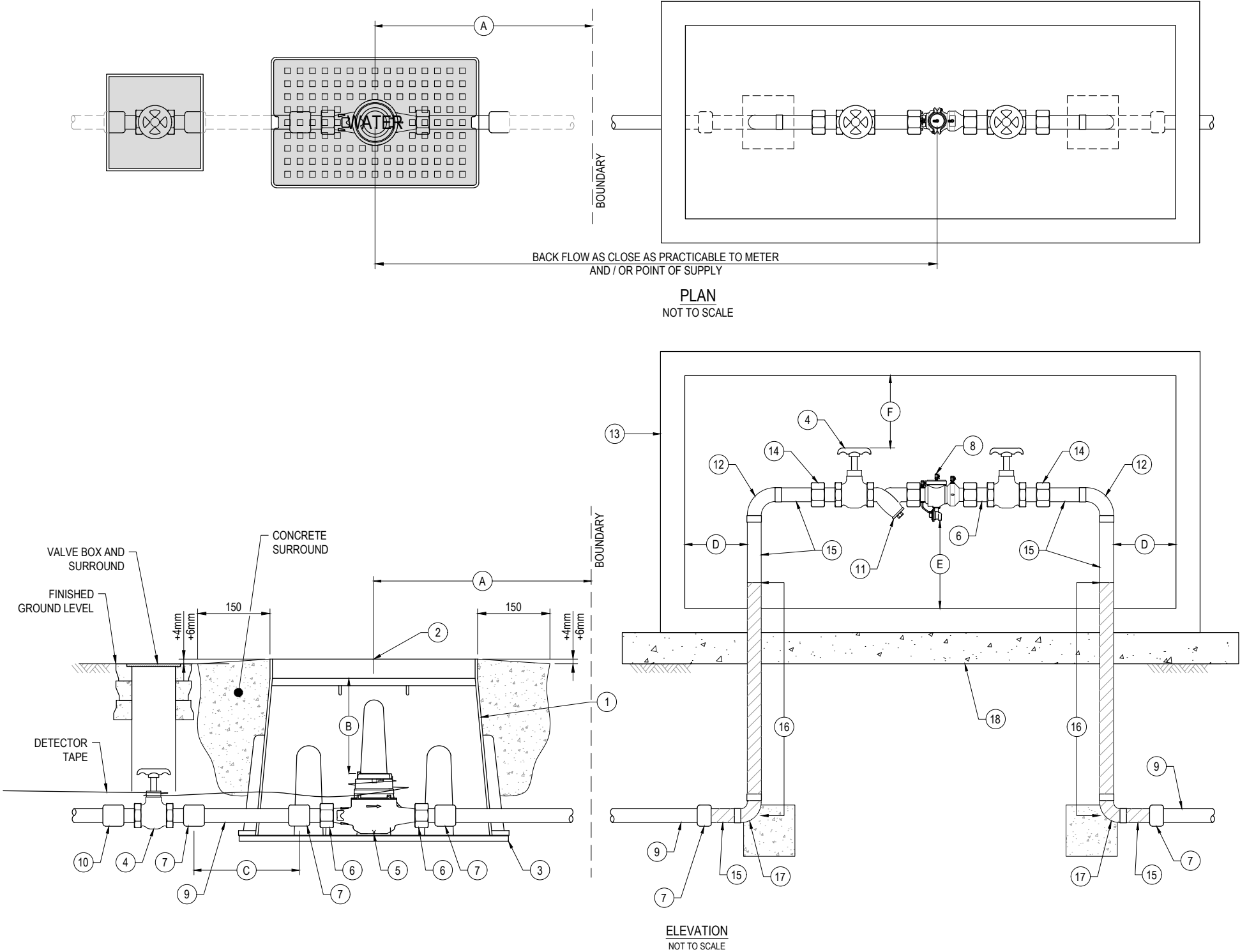
File Name:
File Location: C:\USERS\JACK.SCOTT\ONE DRIVE - WELLINGTON WATER\DOCUMENTS\REGIONAL SPEC DRAWINGS\DRAWINGS - FINAL



COMMERCIAL WATER METER - STANDARD BELOW GROUND INSTALLATION	
ITEM	DESCRIPTION / SPECIFICATION
1	ACUFLO OR SIMILAR MIDI BOX – AMB300P / JUMBO BOX - AMBJ320P
2	POLYPROPYLENE LID- AMBJ004P OR SIMILAR
3	PLASTIC METER BASE – AMB006P / AMBJ005P OR SIMILAR
4	SERVICE VALVE AS PER THE APPROVED PRODUCTS REGISTER
5	APPROVED IN-LINE WATER METER [25mm OR SMALLER TO BE MANIFOLD TYPE]
6	DR BRASS UNION TAIL
7	ELECTROFUSION THREADED TRANSITION FITTING
8	APPROVED BACKFLOW DEVICE
9	25, 32, 40mm PE100 SDR11 PIPE
10	CONNECTION AS REQUIRED
11	STRAINER - SCREEN SIZE BACKFLOW MANUFACTURER'S RECOMMENDATION
12	25, 32 & 40mm COPPER ELBOW MAY BE BRAZED OR CROXED BRAZED CONNECTION ONLY (FOR WCC)
13	CABINET OR PROTECTIVE ENCLOSURE (SEE NOTES)
14	CROX CONNECTION
15	25, 32 & 40mm COPPER PIPE
16	PIPE WRAPPED WITH DENSO GREASE TAPE
17	25, 32 & 40mm COPPER ELBOW BRAZED CONNECTION ONLY
18	CONCRETE SLAB - GRADED TO KERB FOR DRAINAGE
DIMENSION	
A	OFFSET: METER TO BOUNDARY 500mm
B	REQUIRED CLEARANCE: MINIMUM: 50mm MAXIMUM: 200mm
C	MINIMUM DIMENSION: 400mm
D	MINIMUM DIMENSION: 300mm
E	MINIMUM CLEARANCE: 300mm

NOTES:

- SERVICE VALVE AND METER SHALL BE INSTALLED IN THE ROAD RESERVE OUTSIDE THE PROPERTY SERVICED. WHERE THIS IS NOT PRACTICABLE, LOCATION TO BE CONFIRMED WITH WELLINGTON WATER PRIOR TO INSTALLATION.
- SERVICE VALVE AND METER SHALL BE POSITIONED IN THE ROAD RESERVE AS PER THE REQUIREMENTS OF THE REGIONAL SPECIFICATION FOR WATER SERVICES.
- SERVICE VALVE AND METER BOXES SHALL BE SET-UP AT RIGHT ANGLES TO THE PROPERTY BOUNDARY.
- METER BOX SHALL HAVE PLASTIC BASE CORRECTLY INSTALLED AND FITTED.
- SERVICE VALVE AND METER SHOULD BE INSTALLED OUTSIDE OF THE MOTORCROSSING.
- WHERE THE METER CANNOT BE INSTALLED OUTSIDE OF THE MOTOR CROSSING, THE PLASTIC METER BOX SHALL BE SET WITH A 20mPa CONCRETE SURROUND A MINIMUM 100mm THICK AND 150mm WIDE. ALTERNATIVELY, THE METER SHALL BE INSTALLED IN AN APPROVED DUCTILE IRON OR CAST IRON BOX COMPLETE WITH CONCRETE PACKER BLOCKS. SIZE OF BOX MUST BE SUFFICIENT TO ENABLE METER TO BE SERVICED WITHIN BOX.
- THE TOP SURFACE OF THE CONCRETE SURROUND SHALL:
 - FALL 4-6 mm TO PROVIDE POSITIVE DRAINAGE AWAY FROM THE METER BOX.
 - BE SQUARED WITHIN FORMWORK AND BE NEAT AND TIDY.
 - BE TROWELLED TO BE FLUSH WITH THE TOP OF THE BOX.
 - HAVE A BROOMED FINISH WHEN NOT IN THE CBD.
 - HAVE AN EXPOSED AGGREGATE FINISH WHEN IN THE CBD.
- DETECTOR TAPE TO BE INSTALLED ABOVE SERVICE PIPE ARRANGEMENT, UP TO THE METER BOX.
- WHERE INSTALLATION CONFLICTS WITH LOCAL COUNCIL BYLAWS, THE BYLAWS TAKE PRECEDENCE. APPROVAL MUST BE OBTAINED PRIOR TO CONSTRUCTION FROM WELLINGTON WATER.



NOTES (ENCLOSURE):

- THE ENCLOSURE SHALL BE PLACED AS CLOSE AS POSSIBLE TO THE BOUNDARY. WHERE THIS IS NOT PRACTICABLE, LOCATION TO BE CONFIRMED WITH WELLINGTON WATER PRIOR TO INSTALLATION.
- THE ENCLOSURE SHALL BE CONSTRUCTED FROM POWDER COATED MILD STEEL MESH WITH POWDER COATED STEEL BRACKETS TO FORM EDGES AND VERTICAL SUPPORTS. VERTICAL SUPPORTS TO BE BOLTED INTO THE FINISHES AT GROUND LEVEL.
- THE WIRE MESH ENCLOSURE SHALL HAVE A HINGED PANEL FOR MAINTENANCE ACCESS TO FITTINGS AND PIPEWORK. PANEL IS TO BE SECURED WITH A PADLOCK OR OTHER SECURITY MECHANISM AS AGREED WITH WELLINGTON WATER.

REV	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	REV	DATE	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	DATE
A	PRELIMINARY ISSUE	SS	CB	GC	03/20				
B	REVISED TABLE AND NOTES	AL	DM	GC	07/20				
C	REVISED TABLE, NOTES AND ENCLOSURE	AL	SUS		10/21				
D	REVISED ENCLOSURE	JS			07/24				



DESIGN	T BIAGIOLI	09/19
UPDATE	S SURESH	10/21
DRAWING UPDATE	A LIM	10/21
CHECKED	E GREENBERG	11/21
REVIEWED	K WYNN	11/21
APPROVED	K WYNN	12/21

REGIONAL SPECIFICATION FOR WATER SERVICES
BELOW GROUND COMMERCIAL METER AND BACKFLOW INSTALLATION
(25mm TO 40mm)

SCALE: NOT TO SCALE	SHEET No. 1 OF 1 SHEETS.
DRAWING SIZE: A1	PROJECT/FILE NUMBER:
DRAWING N°: WS09	

THIS DRAWING AND ITS CONTENTS ARE THE PROPERTY OF
WELLINGTON WATER LIMITED AND ITS CLIENT COUNCILS.
ANY REPRODUCTION OR USE, IN FULL OR PART, MUST BE
AUTHORISED BY THE OWNER.

WARNING: PRINTED COPIES ARE UNCONTROLLED



PLOT DETAILS:
Date Plotted:
Plotted By: Jack Scott

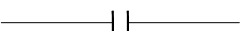





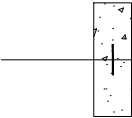
File Name:
File Location: C:\USERS\JACK.SCOTT\ONE DRIVE - WELLINGTON WATER\DOCUMENTS\REGIONAL SPEC DRAWINGS\DRAWINGS - FINAL



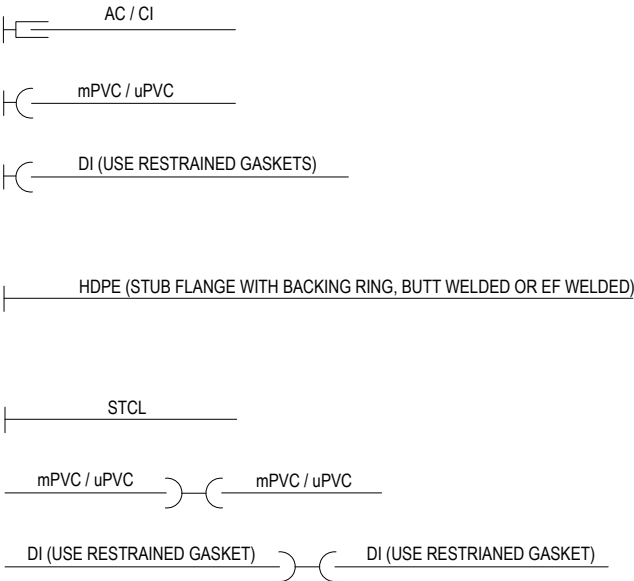
NOTES:

- 1) CONNECTION TO EXISTING PIPES WILL TYPICALLY OCCUR AT A FLANGE DI BEND OR TEE OR AT A FLANGED STCL SPECIAL.
- 2) STCL OR DI SPOOL WITH A PUDDLE FLANGE AND CONCRETE THRUST WALL SHOULD BE USED WHEN CONNECTING HDPE PIPE TO AC, CI, PVC OR DI TO ACCOMMODATE THE FORCES GENERATED BY THE POISSON EFFECT IN THE HDPE.
- 3) IF THERE IS A DIFFERENCE IN THE DEPTH OF THE EXISTING MAIN AND THE NEW MAIN THEN A ROCKER PIPE OF THE SAME MATERIAL AS THE NEW MAIN MAY BE USED AND A MECHANICAL JOINT MAY BE USED TO CONNECT IT TO THE EXISTING MAIN. IF THE DEFLECTION IS GREATER THAN 3° THEN A STCL SPECIAL OR STANDARD DI FLANGED BENDS WILL BE REQUIRED.

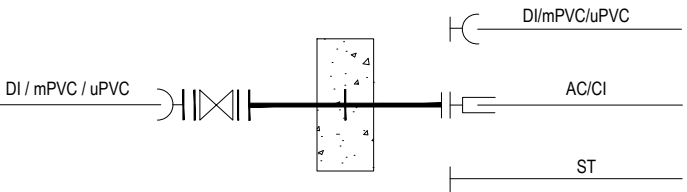
PIPE ABBREVIATIONS	
AC	ASBESTOS CEMENT
CI	CAST IRON
DI	DUCTILE IRON
HDPE	HIGH DENSITY POLYETHYLENE
mPVC	MODIFIED POLYVINYL CHLORIDE
uPVC	UNPLASTICISED POLYVINYL CHLORIDE
STCL	STEEL CEMENT LINED

LEGEND	
	FLANGED/FLANGED JOINT
	FLANGE/SOCKET ADAPTER
	MECHANICAL FLANGE ADAPTER
	MECHANICAL JOINT
	SOCKET/SOCKET CONNECTOR
	SLUICE VALVE
	PUDDLE FLANGE WITH CONCRETE THRUST BLOCK

PREFERRED CONNECTIONS FOR VARIOUS MATERIAL TYPES.



STCL OR DI FLANGED SPOOL WITH A PUDDLE FLANGE AND CONCRETE THRUST WALL SHOULD BE USED WHEN AN IN-LINE VALVE HAS BEEN INSTALLED TO ENSURE THE VALVE IS RESTRAINED FROM EITHER DIRECTION. THE PUDDLE FLANGE SPOOL AND IN-LINE VALVE SHOULD BE FLANGED TOGETHER.



ACCEPTABLE CONNECTION TYPES FOR REPAIRS OR CONNECTIONS TO EXSITING PIPES WHERE THE PREFERRED CONNECTIONS ARE NOT POSSIBLE.



EXAMPLES OF WATER MAIN CONNECTIONS

NOTE: DOES NOT INCLUDE FIRE HYDRANTS
PLAN VIEWS
DIAGRAMMATIC ONLY

REV	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	REV	DATE	AMENDMENT	DWN	CHK	DATE
A	PRELIMINARY ISSUE	AL			02/20				
B	RATIONALISED NUMBER OF CONNECTIONS	AL	EG		11/21				
C	UPDATED DRAWING NUMBER	JS			01/25				



DESIGN	WWL	-
UPDATE	J EWEG	11/21
DRAWING UPDATE	A LIM	11/21
CHECKED	E GREENBERG	11/21
REVIEWED	J EWEG	11/21
APPROVED	J EWEG	11/21


REGIONAL SPECIFICATION FOR WATER SERVICES	
EXAMPLES OF WATER MAIN CONNECTIONS	


SCALE: NOT TO SCALE	SHEET No. 1 OF 1 SHEETS.
DRAWING SIZE: A1	PROJECT/FILE NUMBER: -
DRAWING N°: WS13	

© COPYRIGHT: THIS DRAWING AND ITS CONTENTS ARE THE PROPERTY OF WELLINGTON WATER LIMITED AND ITS CLIENT COUNCILS. ANY REPRODUCTION OR USE, IN FULL OR PART, MUST BE AUTHORISED BY THE OWNER.

WARNING: PRINTED COPIES ARE UNCONTROLLED



PLOT DETAILS:
Date Plotted: 
Plotted By: Jack Scott

File Name: 
File Location: C:\USERS\JACK.SCOTT\ONE DRIVE - WELLINGTON WATER\DOCUMENTS\REGIONAL SPEC DRAWINGS\DRAWINGS - FINAL

